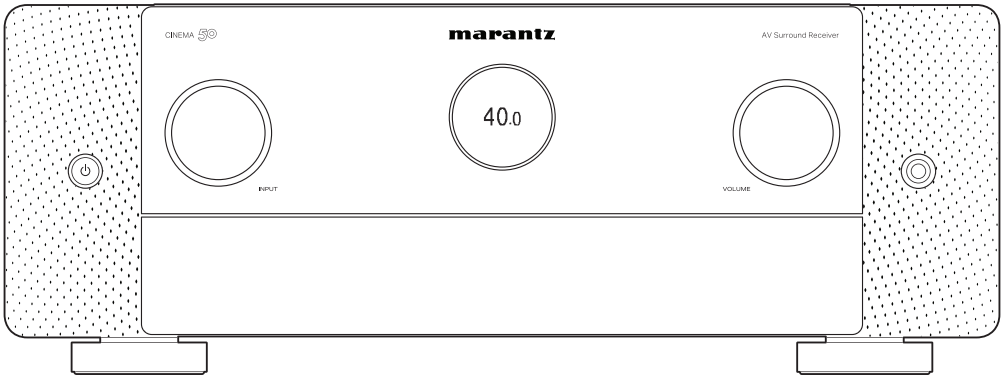
marantz®



CINEMA 50 | AV Surround Receiver

Owner's Manual

Accessories 9
Inserting the batteries 10
Operating range of the remote control unit 10
Features 11
High quality sound 11
High performance 14
Easy operation 18
Part names and functions 19
Front panel 19
Display 22
Rear panel 24
Remote control unit 28

Connections

Speaker installation 32
Connecting speakers 38
Before connecting speakers 38
Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals 42
Connecting an external power amplifier 43
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings 45
Connecting 5.1-channel speakers 47
Connecting 7.1-channel speakers 48
Connecting 9.1-channel speakers 49
Connecting 11.1-channel speakers 50
Connecting 7.1-channel speakers: Bi-amp connection of front speakers 53
Connecting 7.1-channel speakers: Second pair of front speakers 54
Connecting multi-zone speakers 55

Connecting a TV 57
Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC / eARC 58
Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC / eARC 59
Connecting a playback device 60
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV) 61
Connecting a media player 62
Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player 63
Connecting a game console or player device compatible with 8K 64
Connecting a turntable 65
Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port 66
Connecting FM/AM antennas 67
Connecting to a home network (LAN) 69
Wired LAN 69
Wireless LAN 70
Connecting an external control device 71
REMOTE CONTROL jacks 71
FLASHER IN jack 73
DC OUT jack 74
Connecting the power cord 75

Playback

Basic operation 77
Turning the power on 77
Selecting the input source 77
Adjusting the volume 78
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) 78
Playback a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player 78
Playing a USB memory device 79
Playing files stored on USB memory devices 80
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device 83
Playing music from Bluetooth device 84
Pairing with other Bluetooth devices 85
Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device 86
Listening to audio on Bluetooth headphones 87
Listening to audio on Bluetooth headphones 88
Reconnecting to a Bluetooth headphones 89
Disconnecting Bluetooth headphones 89

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts 90
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts 91
Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune) 92
Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode) 93
Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory) 93
Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory) 94
Listening to preset stations 94
Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name) 95
Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip) 96
Cancelling Preset Skip 97
Listening to Internet Radio 98
Listening to Internet Radio 99
Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS 100
Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS 101
Getting the HEOS App 104
HEOS Account 105
Playing from streaming music services 106
Listening to the same music in multiple rooms 109
AirPlay function 113
Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad 114
Playing iTunes music with this unit 114
Play a song from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad on multiple synced devices (AirPlay 2) 115
Spotify Connect function 116
Playing Spotify music with this unit 116
Convenience functions 117
Adding to HEOS Favorites 118
Playing back HEOS Favorites 118
Deleting a HEOS Favorites 119
Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer) 119
Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust) 120
Adjusting the tone (Tone) 121
Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay) 122
Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer) 123
Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select) 124
Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo) 125
Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset) 126

Selecting a sound mode 127
Selecting a sound mode 128
Direct playback 129
Pure Direct playback 130
Auto surround playback 130
Description of sound mode types 131
Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal 136
HDMI Control function 141
Setting procedure 141
Sleep timer function 142
Using the sleep timer 143
Smart select function 144
Calling up the settings 145
Changing the settings 146
Panel lock function 148
Disabling all key button operations 148
Disabling all button operations except VOLUME 148
Canceling the Panel lock function 149
Remote lock function 150
Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit 150
Enabling the remote sensor function 150
Web control function 151
Controlling the unit from a web control 151
Playback in ZONE2 (Another room) 154
Connecting ZONE2 154
Playback in ZONE2 156

Settings

Menu map 158
Menu operations 163
Audio 164
Subwoofer Level Adjust 164
Bass Sync 164
Surround Parameter 165
M-DAX 173
Volume 174
Audyssey® 175
Graphic EQ 178

Video 180
HDMI Setup 180
Output Settings 184
On-Screen Display 186
Screensaver 187
4K/8K Signal Format 187
HDCP Setup 189
TV Format 189
Inputs 190
Input Assign 190
Source Rename 193
Hide Sources 193
Source Level 193
Speakers 194
Audyssey® Setup 194
Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup) 196
Error messages 202
Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings 204
Manual Setup 205
Amp Assign 205
Speaker Configuration 215
Distances 223
Levels 225
Crossovers 225
Bass 226
Front Speaker 227
Speaker Connection 227
Tactile Transducer Setup 228
Speaker Preset 229
Network 230
Information 230
Connection 230
Wi-Fi Setup 231
Settings 233
Network Control 234
Friendly Name 235
Diagnostics 235
AirPlay 236
Spotify Connect 237
Wi-Fi and Bluetooth 237

HEOS Account 238
You have not signed in 238
You have already signed in 238
General 239
Language 239
Owner's Manual 239
ECO 239
Bluetooth Transmitter 243
ZONE2 Setup 244
Zone Rename 246
Smart Select Names 246
Trigger Out 247
Front Display 247
Firmware 248
Information 250
Usage Data 252
Save & Load 252
Setup Lock 253
Reset 253
Setting the back light of the remote control unit 254
Disabling the backlight 254
Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit 255

Tips

Tips 257
Troubleshooting 259
Power does not turn on / Power is turned off 260
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit 261
Display on this unit shows nothing 261
No sound comes out 262
Desired sound does not come out 263
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs 266
No video is shown on the TV 267
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV 269
The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal 269
AirPlay cannot be played back 270
USB memory devices cannot be played back 271
Bluetooth cannot be played back 272
The Internet radio cannot be played back 274
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back 275
Various online services cannot be played 276
The HDMI Control function does not work 276
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network 277
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly 278
Update error messages 279

Resetting factory settings 280
Resetting network settings 281
Restoring the firmware to the factory defaults 282

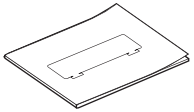
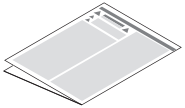
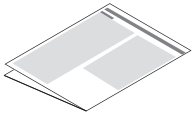
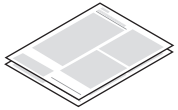
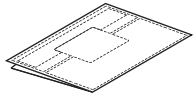
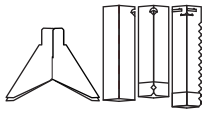
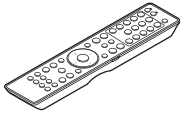
Appendix

About HDMI 283
Relationship between video signals and monitor output 287
Playing back a USB memory devices 289
Playing back a Bluetooth device 290
Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS 291
Playing back Internet Radio 292
Personal memory plus function 292
Last function memory 292
Sound modes and channel output 293
Sound modes and surround parameters 295
Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes 298
Explanation of terms 301
Trademark information 311
Specifications 314
Index 319

Thank you for purchasing this Marantz product.
To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.
After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

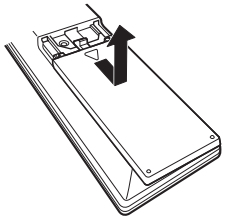
Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

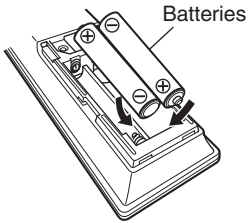
 Quick Start Guide	 Safety Instructions	 Notes on radio	 Warranty (for USA/for CANADA)	 Cable labels
Power cord	FM indoor antenna	AM loop antenna	Sound calibration microphone	 Sound calibration microphone stand
 Remote control unit (RC049SR)	R03/AAA batteries	External antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity		

Inserting the batteries

1 **Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.**



2 **Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.**



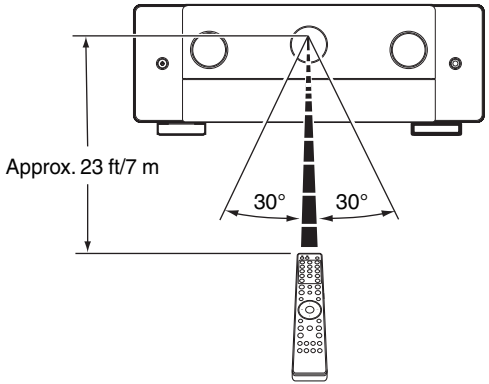
3 **Put the rear cover back on.**

NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



Features

High quality sound

- **Powerful 9-channel Discrete Amplifier**
  Featuring discrete high-current power amplifiers on all channels, this unit delivers 110 W of power per channel (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz - 20 kHz, T.H.D.: 0.08 %, 2ch. driven). With low impedance driver capability, it offers operational stability with a wide range of speakers for balanced, quality sound.
  Auto Eco Mode adjusts power output to speakers based on volume level and on-screen eco meter, providing power consumption reduction in real-time without sacrificing superb Marantz sound.
- **Discrete 4 subwoofers**
  Immerse yourself in evenly distributed, accurate bass. Featuring up to four subwoofer outputs to smooth out low frequencies and provide better dispersion. No audible peaks or dips - just powerful, room-filling bass.
- **Current feedback amplifier**
  This unit uses a high-speed current feedback amplifier circuit for its preamplifier so that signals from a Blu-ray Disc player and other equipment that support high-definition audio formats can be amplified with high fidelity. The high-speed current feedback amplifier also reproduces a natural sound space.
- **Dolby Atmos (☞ p. 302)**
  This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.
- **Speaker Virtualizer (☞ p. 167)**
  Speaker Virtualizer enables you to access a more immersive entertainment experience from traditional channel based speaker layouts through digital signal processing including Dolby Atmos height virtualization and surround virtualization.
  - Speaker Virtualizer is not for use when both height speakers and surround speakers are connected.
  - Height Virtualization may be applied when surround speakers are connected.
- **DTS:X (☞ p. 305)**
  This unit is equipped with the DTS:X decoder technology. DTS:X brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels. The flexibility of objects allows for sound to be scaled large or small and moved around the room with greater accuracy than ever before leading to a richer immersive audio experience.
- **DTS Virtual:X (☞ p. 306)**
  DTS Virtual:X technology features DTS's proprietary virtual height and virtual surround processing to deliver an immersive sound experience from any type of input source (stereo to 7.1.4 channel) and speaker configuration.
  - DTS Virtual:X is not for use when Height speakers are connected.

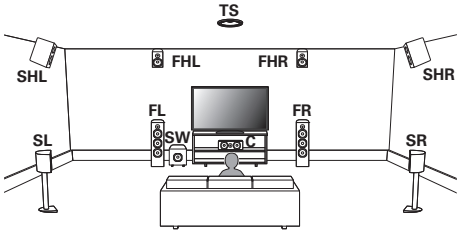
- **IMAX Enhanced (☞ p. 306)**
  This IMAX Enhanced product have met stringent performance standards established by IMAX and DTS in order to create a consistent and higher bar for sound performance. DTS has developed a special method for reproducing an IMAX signature sound experience in the consumer's home. This method combines a unique conversion process for IMAX theatrical audio mixes utilizing an enhanced DTS codec technology. The IMAX theatrical audio format with point source surround speakers closely matches the speaker configuration most consumers have in their homes today. Coupled with DTS audio technology, IMAX Enhanced audio products will ensure the best and most accurate audio reproduction over 5.1 or more speaker channels.
- **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment) (☞ p. 177)**
  Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.
- **Discrete subwoofers and Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ (☞ p. 195)**
  The unit has four subwoofer output capability and can adjust the level and delay for each subwoofer individually.
  Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the four subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to four subwoofers together for improved deep bass response and detail.

- **Auro-3D**

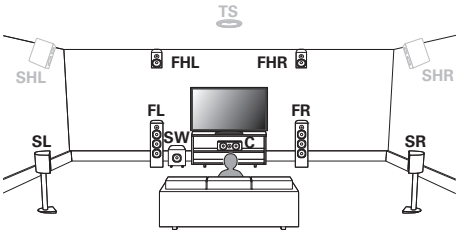
  This unit is equipped with an Auro-3D decoder.
  With Auro-3D, Front Height (FHL + FHR), Surround Height (SHL + SHR) and Top Surround (TS/optional) are added to a conventional 5.1-channel system to achieve a natural and realistic sound field that is three-dimensional and fully immersive.

  You will be able to fully enjoy Auro-3D playback if you properly place the speakers for Auro-3D.

■ Auro-3D playback



■ Dolby Atmos playback

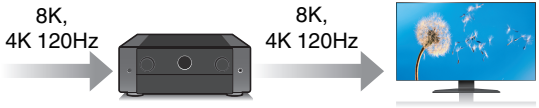


- Auro-3D does not support a Dolby Atmos configuration using Top Front, Top Middle or Top Rear speakers.
  But it is possible to support both an Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos by adding Front Height and Rear Height speakers* to a 5.1 configuration.

  * For an optimum Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are strongly recommended.

High performance

- **8K 60Hz input/output supported**



When 8K Ultra HD (High Definition) is used, an input/output speed of 60 frames per second (60p) is achieved for video signals. When connected to 8K Ultra HD and 60p video signal input compatible TV, you can enjoy the sense of realism only available from high-definition images, even when viewing fast-moving video.
This unit supports a wide range of HDR content, delivering even higher definition video.

- **HDCP 2.3**
  This unit is compatible with HDCP 2.3 copyright protection standard.

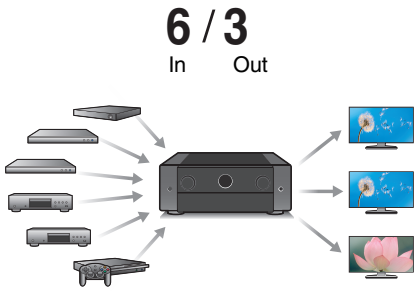
- **Digital video processor upscales 1080p / 4K to 8K**

This unit is equipped with a 8K video upscaling function that allows 1080p/4K video to be output via HDMI at 8K (7680 × 4320 pixels) resolution. This function enables the device to be connected to a TV using a single HDMI cable, and produces high definition images for any video source.

- **eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel) function compatibility**
  The eARC function is compatible with conventional ARC function-compatible audio formats in addition to multichannel linear PCM, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS-HD, DTS:X and other audio formats a conventional ARC function cannot transmit.
  Additionally, connecting to an eARC function-compatible television enables enjoyment of higher-quality surround playback of the audio content played from your television.

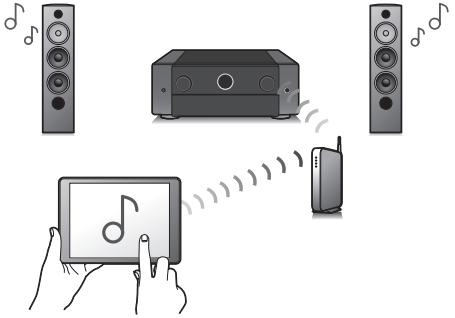
- **Equipped with HDMI ZONE2 output** (☞ p. 154)
  The ZONE2 multi-room output includes an HDMI output that lets you enjoy a different A/V source in that room, with another program playing in the main room.

- **HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (6 inputs, 3 outputs)**



For connection to a broad range of digital sources, this unit features 6 HDMI inputs, that lets you quickly and conveniently connect a camcorder, game console or other HDMI-equipped device. There are dual HDMI outputs for the main room, and a third HDMI output for ZONE2.

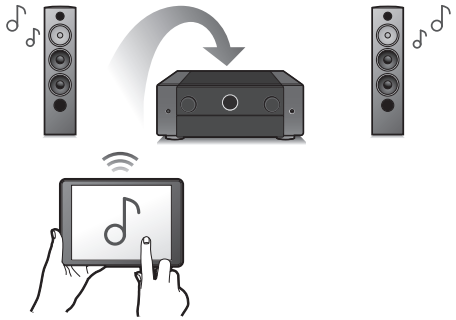
- **The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (☞ p. 113)**



You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC.
This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

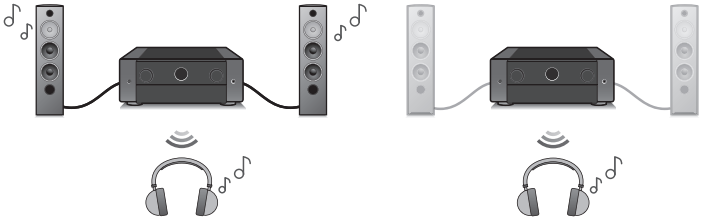
- **Supports AirPlay 2® wireless audio**
  Sync multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices/speakers for simultaneous playback.
  This unit supports AirPlay 2 and requires iOS 11.4 or later.

- **Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks**
  This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (5.6 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.
- **Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily (☞ p. 83)**



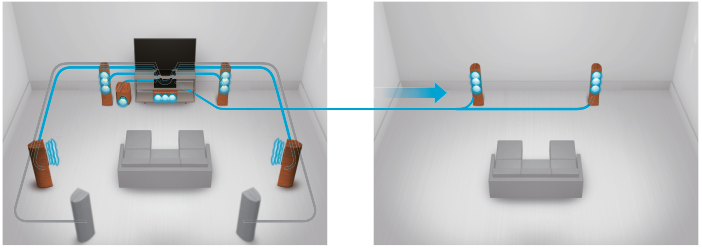
You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

- **Connect Bluetooth headphones**
  This unit can transmit Bluetooth so you can enjoy audio wirelessly through your Bluetooth headphones.
  Playback can be performed using connected speakers and Bluetooth headphones simultaneously, or only using Bluetooth headphones.



- **Multi-Room audio** (☞ p. 125)

【MAIN ZONE】 【ZONE2】



You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.
In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the background music propagate throughout the whole house.

- **Energy-saving design**

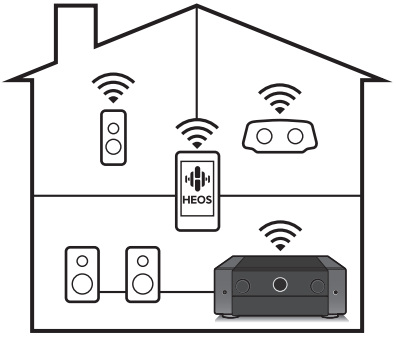
This unit is equipped with an ECO Mode function that allows you to enjoy music and movies while reducing the power consumption during use, and also an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.

- **Compatible with the "Marantz AVR Remote" App* for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)**

The Marantz AVR Remote app gives you full control of this unit as well as access to its setup menu for detailed adjustments from your phones or tablets. "Marantz AVR Remote" App also gives you quick access to the receiver's status display, option menus, Marantz Blu-ray Disc player control, and online owner's manual for your convenience.

∗ Download the appropriate "Marantz AVR Remote" App for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPad, iPhone or Android™ is connected to.

- **HEOS provides streaming music from your favorite online music sources**



HEOS wireless multi-room sound system that enables you to enjoy your favorite music anywhere and everywhere around your home. By utilizing your existing home network and the HEOS App (available for iOS, Android and Amazon devices), you can explore, browse, and play music from your own music library or from many online streaming music services.

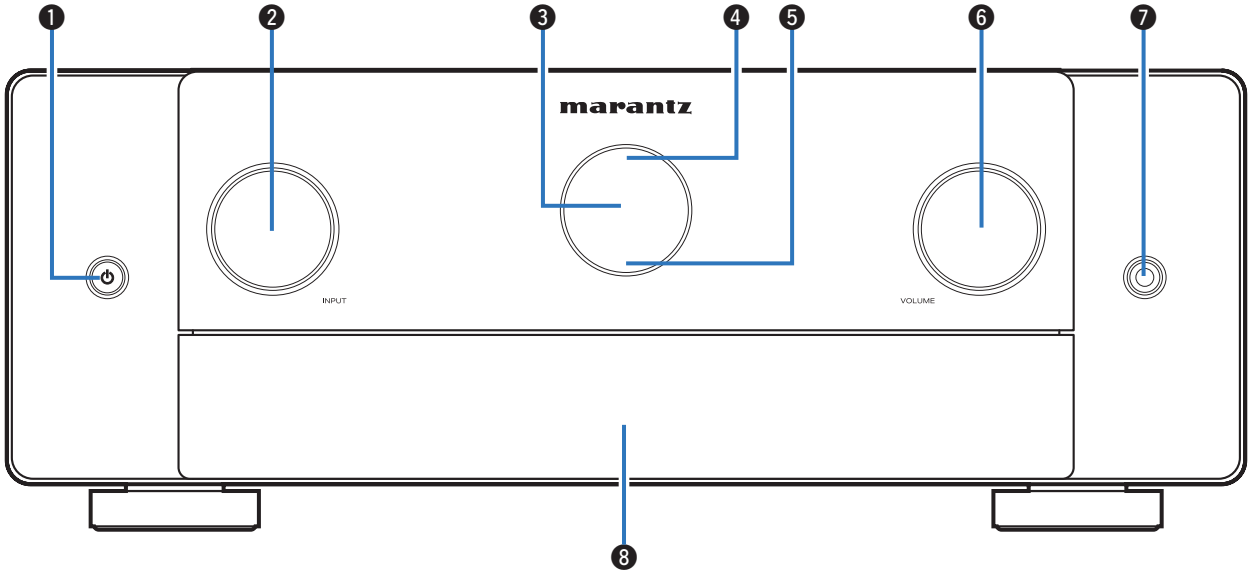
When multiple products with HEOS Built-in are connected to the same network, they can be grouped to play the same music on all products simultaneously, or different music can be played on each one.

Easy operation

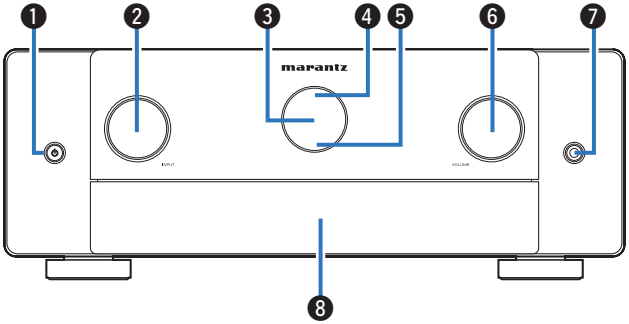
- **“Setup Assistant” provides easy-to-follow setup instructions**
  First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.
- **Easy to use Graphical User Interface**
  This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.

Part names and functions

Front panel



For details, see the next page.



1 Power operation button (⏻)

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). (☞ p. 77)

2 INPUT selector knob

This selects the input source. (☞ p. 77)

3 Display

This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 22)

4 Remote control sensor

This receives signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 10)

5 Protection circuit indicator

This blinks when the protection circuit has operated. (☞ p. 260)

6 VOLUME knob

This adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 78)

7 Headphones jack

This is used to connect headphones.

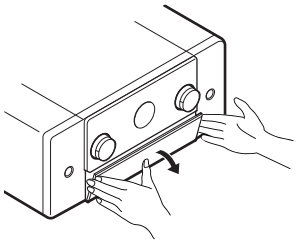
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

NOTE

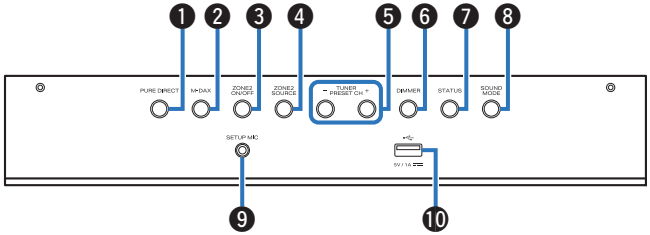
- To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

8 Door

When using the buttons and/or terminals behind the door, pull both sides of the door towards you to open it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.



With the door open



1 PURE DIRECT button

This switches the sound mode between Direct, Pure Direct and Auto surround.

- “Direct playback” (☞ p. 129)
- “Pure Direct playback” (☞ p. 130)
- “Auto surround playback” (☞ p. 130)

2 M-DAX button

This switches the M-DAX mode. (☞ p. 173)

3 ZONE2 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE2 (another room) on/off. (☞ p. 156)

4 ZONE2 SOURCE button

This selects the input source for ZONE2. (☞ p. 156)

5 Tuner preset channel buttons (TUNER PRESET CH +, –)

These select preset broadcast stations. (☞ p. 94)

6 DIMMER button

Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. (☞ p. 247)

7 STATUS button

Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display.

8 SOUND MODE button

Switching the sound mode. (☞ p. 127)

9 SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. (☞ p. 197)

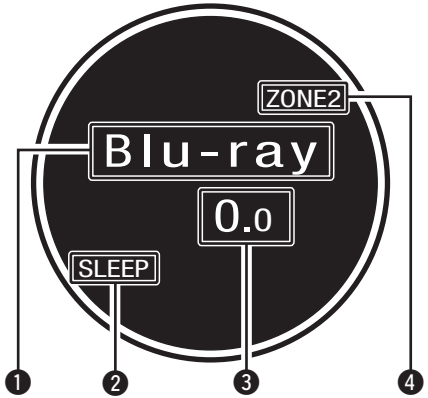
10 USB port (⇜)

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices). (☞ p. 66)

Display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

❑ Standard display



❶ Input source indicator

The currently selected input source name is displayed.

If the input source name has been changed using “Source Rename” in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed. (☞ p. 193)

❷ Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (☞ p. 142)

❸ Volume indicator

❹ ZONE2 power on display

Lights up when ZONE2 power is turned on.

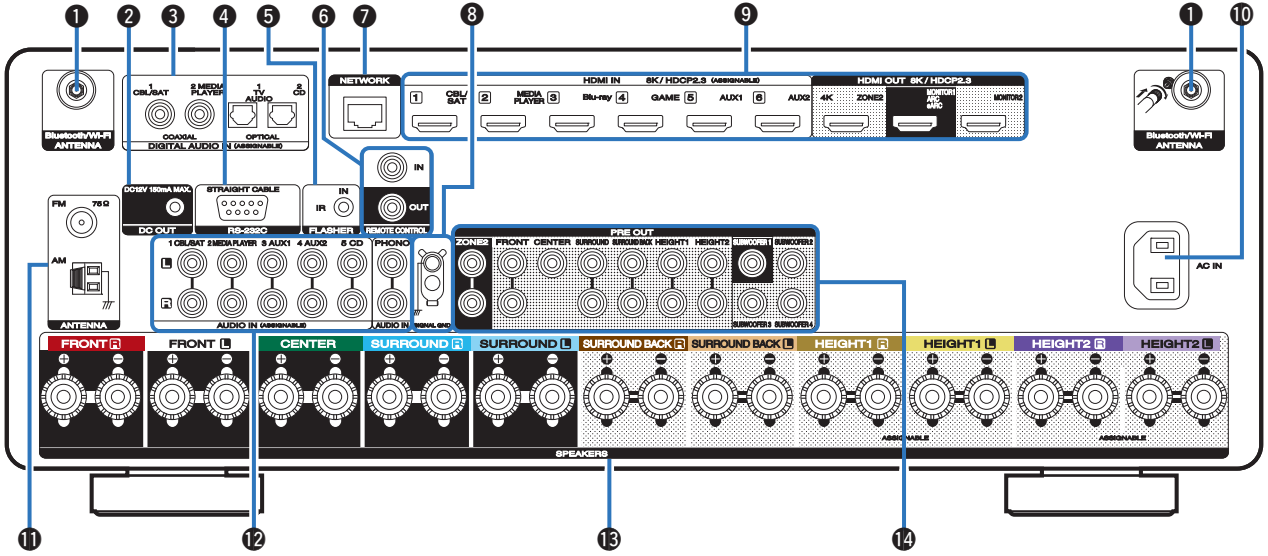
❑ Tuner display

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to “Tuner”.

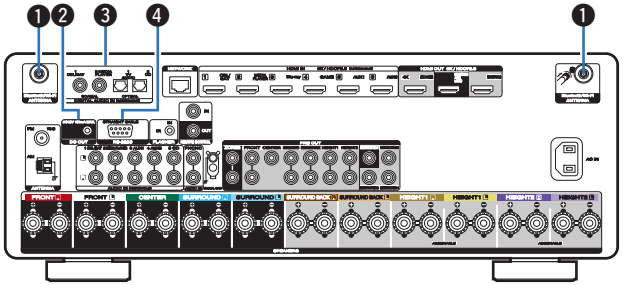
❺ Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

❻ Lights up when receiving FM stereo broadcasts.

Rear panel



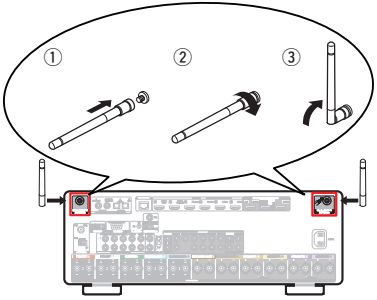
For details, see the next page.



❶ Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors

Used to connect the included external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth. (☞ p. 70)

① Place the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity evenly over the screw terminal of rear.
② Turn clockwise until the antennas is fully connected.
③ Rotate the antenna upwards for best reception.



❷ DC OUT jack

Used to connect devices equipped with the trigger function. (☞ p. 74)

❸ Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors.

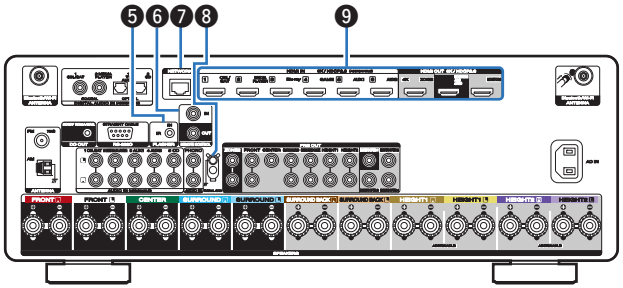
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC / eARC” (☞ p. 59)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 61)
- “Connecting a media player” (☞ p. 62)

❹ RS-232C connector

Used to connect home automation controller devices fitted with RS-232C connectors. Consult the owner’s manual of the home automation controller for more information about serial control of this unit.

Perform the operation below beforehand.

① Turn on the power of this unit.
② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.



5 FLASHER IN jack

Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.

6 REMOTE CONTROL jacks

Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. (☞ p. 71)

7 NETWORK connector

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network. (☞ p. 69)

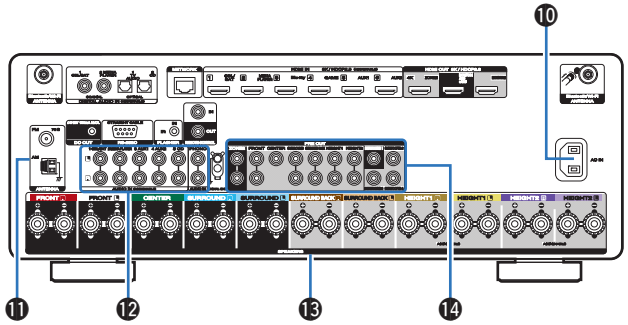
8 SIGNAL GND terminal

Used to connect a ground wire for the turntable. (☞ p. 65)

9 HDMI connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors.

- “Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC / eARC” (☞ p. 58)
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC / eARC” (☞ p. 59)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 61)
- “Connecting a media player” (☞ p. 62)
- “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player” (☞ p. 63)
- “Connecting a game console or player device compatible with 8K” (☞ p. 64)



⑩ AC inlet (AC IN)

Used to connect the power cord. (☞ p. 75)

⑪ FM/AM antenna terminals (ANTENNA)

Used to connect FM antennas and AM loop antennas. (☞ p. 67)

⑫ Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 61)
- “Connecting a media player” (☞ p. 62)
- “Connecting a turntable” (☞ p. 65)

⑬ Speaker terminals (SPEAKERS)

Used to connect speakers. (☞ p. 38)

⑭ PRE OUT connectors

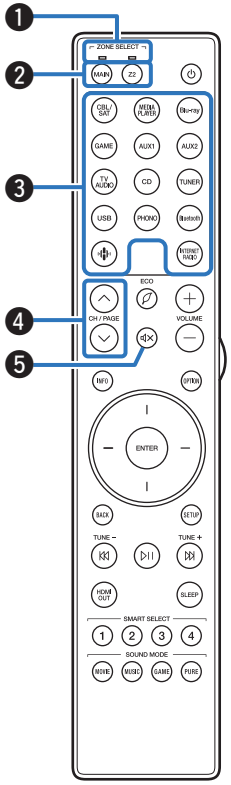
Used to connect a subwoofer with built-in amplifier or an external power amplifier.

- “Connecting the subwoofer” (☞ p. 39)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)
- “Connecting 11.1-channel speakers” (☞ p. 50)
- “Connecting ZONE2” (☞ p. 154)

NOTE

- Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

Remote control unit



1 Zone mode indicators

The indicator of the zone that you are operating lights up.

2 ZONE SELECT buttons (MAIN, Z2)

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2) that is operated through the remote control unit.

- “Playback in ZONE2” (☞ p. 156)
- “Menu operations” (☞ p. 163)
- “Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit” (☞ p. 255)

3 Input source select buttons

These selects the input source.

- “Selecting the input source” (☞ p. 77)
- “Playback in ZONE2” (☞ p. 156)

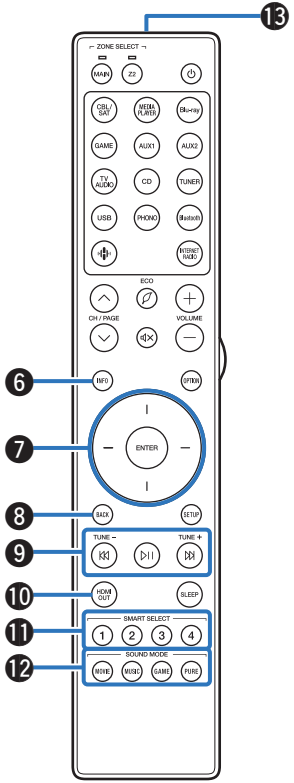
4 Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ∧∨)

These select radio stations registered to presets or switch pages. (☞ p. 94)

5 MUTE button (🔇)

This mutes the output audio.

- “Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)” (☞ p. 78)
- “Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2)” (☞ p. 157)



6 Information button (INFO)
This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 251)

7 Cursor buttons
These select items.

8 BACK button
This returns to the previous screen.

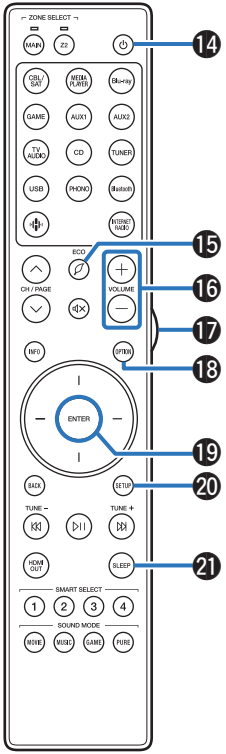
9 System buttons
These perform playback related operations.
Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, –)
These select either FM broadcast or AM broadcast. (☞ p. 91)

10 HDMI OUT button
This sets the HDMI monitor output. (☞ p. 184)

11 SMART SELECT buttons (1 – 4)
These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 144)

12 SOUND MODE buttons
These select the sound mode. (☞ p. 127)

13 Remote control signal transmitter
This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 10)



14 POWER button (⏻)

This turns the power on/off.

- “Turning the power on” (☞ p. 77)
- “Playback in ZONE2” (☞ p. 156)

15 ECO Mode button (🍃)

This switches to ECO Mode. (☞ p. 239)

16 VOLUME buttons (+−)

These adjusts the volume level.

- “Adjusting the volume” (☞ p. 78)
- “Adjusting the volume (ZONE2)” (☞ p. 157)

17 Light button

This turns on the backlight for approx. 5 seconds. (☞ p. 254)

18 OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

19 ENTER button

This determines the selection.

20 SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 163)

21 SLEEP button

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 142)

Contents

Speaker installation	32
Connecting speakers	38
Connecting a TV	57
Connecting a playback device	60
Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port	66
Connecting FM/AM antennas	67
Connecting to a home network (LAN)	69
Connecting an external control device	71
Connecting the power cord	75

NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the “Setup Assistant” is running, follow the instructions in the “Setup Assistant” (page 9 in the separate “Quick Start Guide”) screen for making connections. (During “Setup Assistant” operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

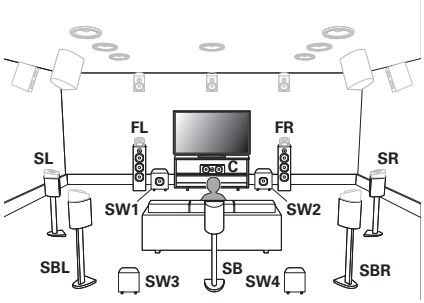
Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.

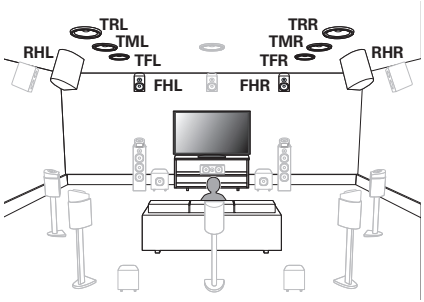
Speaker cable	
Subwoofer cable	
HDMI cable	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
LAN cable	

Speaker installation

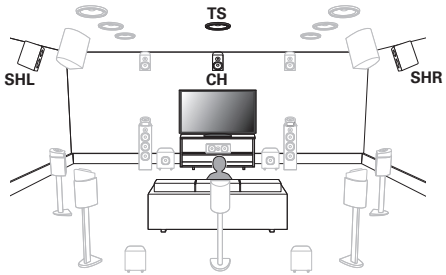
Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room.
Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.



FL/FR (Front speaker left/ right)**:**	Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.
C (Center speaker)**:**	Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.
SL/SR (Surround speaker left/ right)**:**	Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don't have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.
SBL/SBR (Surround back speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.
SW 1/2/3/4 (Subwoofer)**:**	Place your subwoofer near your front speakers. If you are using multiple subwoofers, place pairs of subwoofers spaced equally across the front or rear walls of the room or place single subs midway between the front pairs or rear pairs. You can also set a specific layout when using multiple subwoofers on the "Subwoofer Mode" setting (☞ p. 216): 2 subwoofers: 2 front, or 1 front and 1 rear 3 subwoofers: 2 front and 1rear 4 subwoofers: 2 front and 2 rear

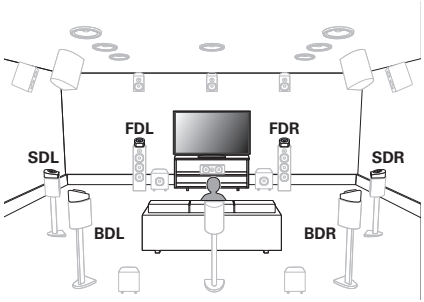


FHL/FHR (Front height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.
TFL/TFR (Top front speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TML/TMR (Top middle speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TRL/TRR (Top rear speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP REAR left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly behind your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
RHL/RHR (Rear height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the REAR HEIGHT left and right speakers directly behind the main listening position. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aligned with the left and right front speakers.



SHL/SHR (Surround height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the surround speakers.
CH (Center height speaker)**:**	Place the CENTER HEIGHT speaker directly above the center speaker. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.
TS (Top surround speaker)**:**	Place the TOP SURROUND speaker directly above the main listening position and aligned with the center channel speaker.

- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

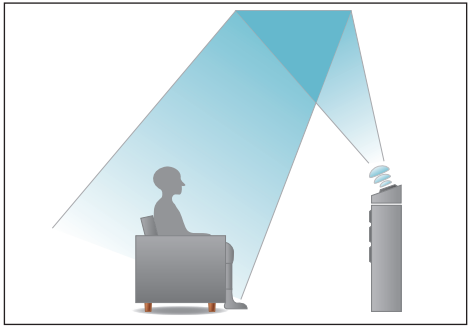


FDL/FDR (Front Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.
SDL/SDR (Surround Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.
BDL/BDR (Back Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the BACK Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround back speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround back speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround back speaker.

About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.

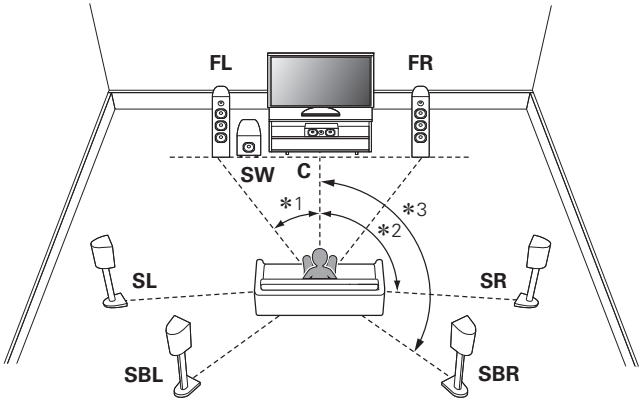


- This unit is compatible with Dolby Atmos and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
- The “Speaker Virtualizer” must be set to “On” for Dolby Atmos playback with 5.1-channel speaker configurations or less. (☞ p. 167)
- IMAX DTS:X / DTS:X can be selected regardless of the speaker configuration.
- Auro-3D recommends adding FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers to a 5.1 speaker configuration. Optionally, you may substitute REAR HEIGHT, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers instead of FRONT HEIGHT and SURROUND HEIGHT speakers for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X and Auro-3D playback.

■ Recommended placement of the speakers

Floor speakers Layout

- Use the following illustration as a guide for the installation location of each floor speaker. You do not have to match them exactly.

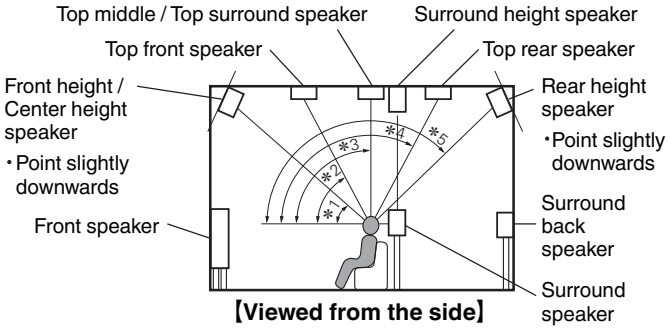


*1 22° - 30° *2 90° - 110° *3 135° - 150°

- If you are not using the surround back speakers, the recommended angle of the surround sound speakers (*2) is 120°.
- When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.

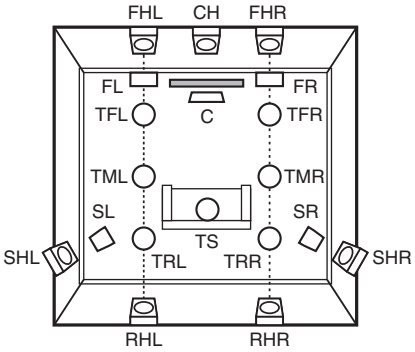
Height speakers Layout

- Use the following illustration as a guide for the installation location of each height speaker. You do not have to match them exactly.



【Viewed from the side】

∗1 30° - 45°　∗2 30° - 55°　∗3 65° - 100°
∗4 125° - 150°　∗5 135° - 150°



【Viewed from the top】

Connecting speakers

Here we connect the speakers in the room to this unit.

Before connecting speakers

NOTE

- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers. Also, turn off the subwoofer.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and - sides touch each other. ("Protection circuit" (☞ p. 310))
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power cord is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock. When the "Setup Assistant" (page 9 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" screen for making connections. (Power is not supplied to the speaker terminals while the "Setup Assistant" is running.)
- Use speakers with an impedance of 4 – 16 Ω/ohms.

NOTE

- Carry out the following settings when using a speaker with an impedance of 4 – 6 Ω/ohms.

1. Press and hold the main unit's ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
   "Video Format < NTSC>" appears on the display.
2. Press DIMMER on the main unit three times.
   "Sp.Imp. <8ohms>" appears on the display.
3. Press TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH − on the main unit to select the impedance.

8ohms (Default)**:**	Select when the impedance for all of the connected speakers is 8 Ω/ohms or over.
6ohms:	Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 6 Ω/ohms.
4ohms:	Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 4 Ω/ohms.

4. Press the main unit's STATUS to complete the setting.

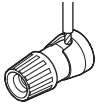
■ Connecting the speaker cables

Carefully check the left (L) and right (R) channels and + (red) and – (black) polarities on the speakers being connected to this unit, and be sure to connect the channels and polarities correctly.

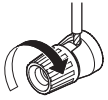
1 **Peel off about 3/8 inch (10 mm) of sheathing from the tip of the speaker cable, then either twist the core wire tightly or terminate it.**

2 **Turn the speaker terminal counterclockwise to loosen it.**

3 **Insert the speaker cable's core wire to the hilt into the speaker terminal.**



4 **Turn the speaker terminal clockwise to tighten it.**

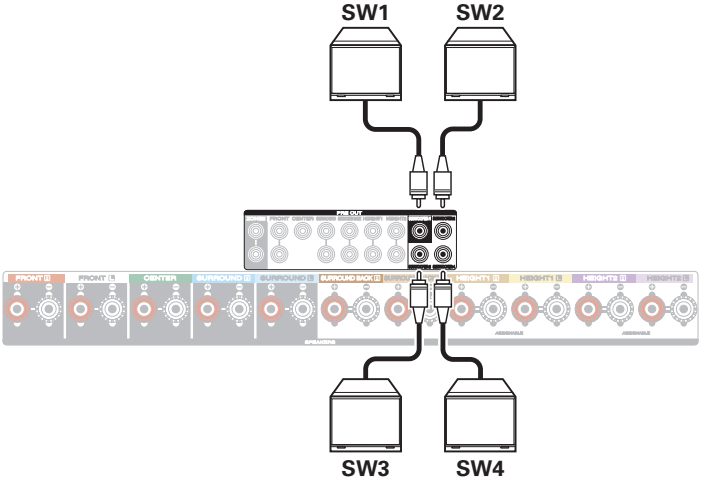


■ Connecting the subwoofer

Use a subwoofer cable to connect the subwoofer. Four subwoofers can be connected to this unit.

When you are connecting multiple subwoofers, change the setting of "Subwoofer" in the "Speaker Configuration" setting according to the number of subwoofers to be connected. (☞ p. 215)

The level and distance can be set separately for Subwoofer 1, Subwoofer 2, Subwoofer 3 and Subwoofer 4.



About the cable labels (supplied) for channel identification

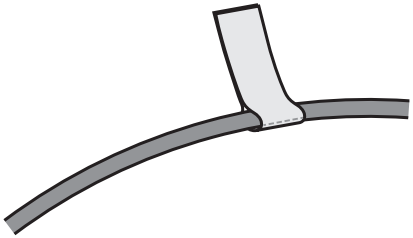
The channel display section for speaker terminals on the rear panel is color-coded for each channel to be identifiable.
Attach the cable label corresponding to each speaker to each speaker cable.
This makes it easy to connect the correct cable to the speaker terminals on the rear panel.

Speaker	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light Blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP FRONT L	Light Yellow
TOP FRONT R	Yellow
TOP MIDDLE L	Light Purple
TOP MIDDLE R	Purple
TOP REAR L	Light Purple
TOP REAR R	Purple

Speaker	Color
SURROUND HEIGHT L	Light Purple
SURROUND HEIGHT R	Purple
REAR HEIGHT L	Light Purple
REAR HEIGHT R	Purple
TOP SURROUND	Beige
CENTER HEIGHT	Brown
FRONT DOLBY L	Light Yellow
FRONT DOLBY R	Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY L	Light Purple
SURROUND DOLBY R	Purple
BACK DOLBY L	Light Purple
BACK DOLBY R	Purple
SUBWOOFER 1	Black
SUBWOOFER 2	Black
SUBWOOFER 3	Black
SUBWOOFER 4	Black

The supplied cable labels include labels for the speaker and HDMI cables. Attach a cable label to each cable that matches the speakers and HDMI devices being connected, as shown below. This makes it easy to identify and properly connect the cables between your components.

【 How to attach the cable labels 】

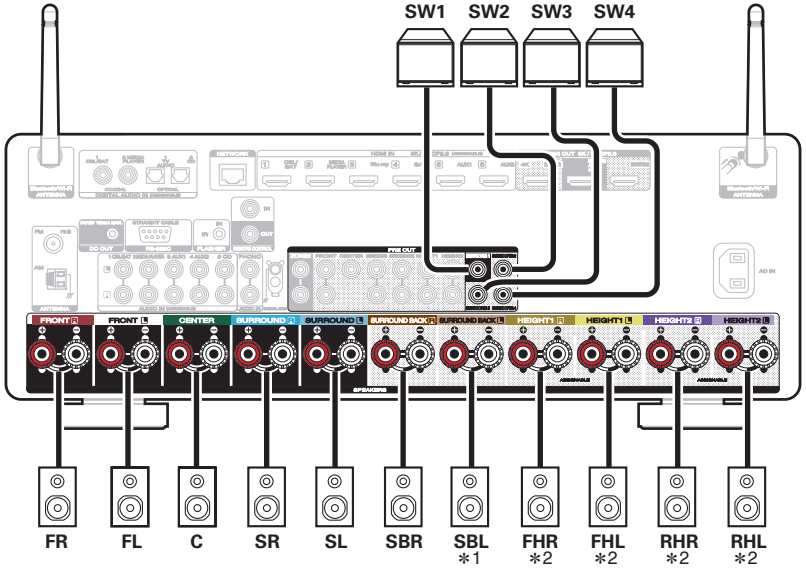


Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals

You can connect 11.4 channel speakers to this unit.

The speaker terminals can perform simultaneous playback for up to 9 channels. Use in combination with pre-out terminals if you wish to perform simultaneous playback for 11 channels. Refer to “Amp Assign” for details. (☞ p. 205)

Connect each speaker according to the speakers you are using.



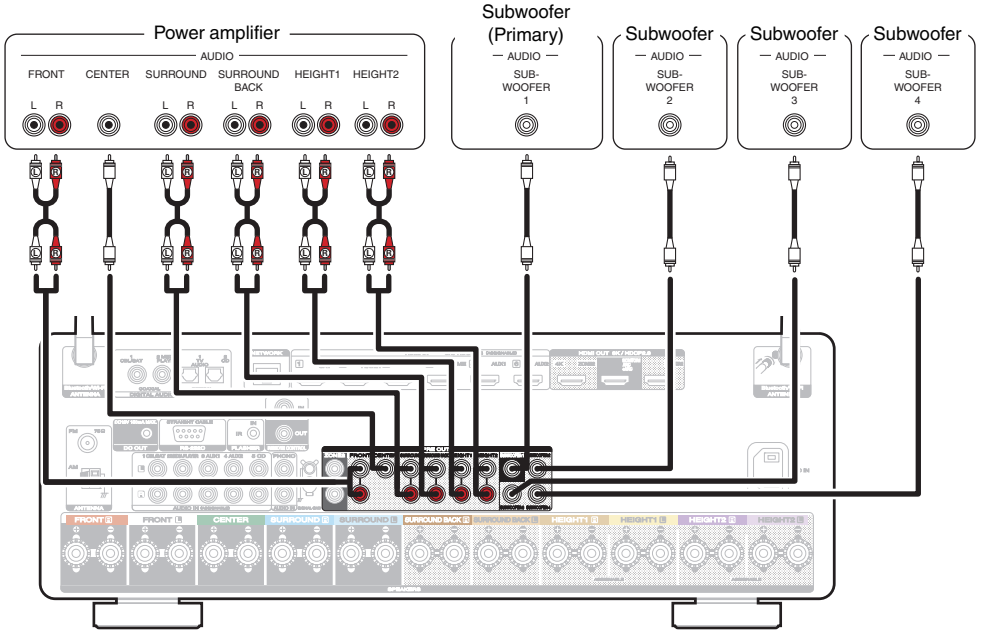
∗1 When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L terminal.

∗2 The output terminals for Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers vary according to the speaker combination that you use. For the speaker terminal that connects each Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker, refer to “Amp Assign” - “Layout” (☞ p. 209).

Connecting an external power amplifier

You can use this unit as a preamplifier by connecting an external power amplifier to the PRE OUT connectors. By adding a power amplifier to each channel, the realness of the sound can be further enhanced.

Select the terminal to use and connect the device.



- Set “Assign Mode” to “Preamplifier” if connecting all channels to the Pre-out connectors using an external amplifier. (☞ p. 207)
  This stops operation of the internal power amplifier of this unit, reducing interference in the preamplifier created by the power amplifier.
- You can use the “Speaker Connection” setting to disconnect the built-in power circuit of each channel individually and use just your favorite channel as the Preamplifier. (☞ p. 227)
- When using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the left channel (L) terminal.
- The output signal for the PRE OUT connector of Height 1 and Height 2 vary depending on the combination of the Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers that you are using. For the PRE OUT connector that connects each Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker, refer to “Amp Assign” - “Layout” (☞ p. 209).

Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings

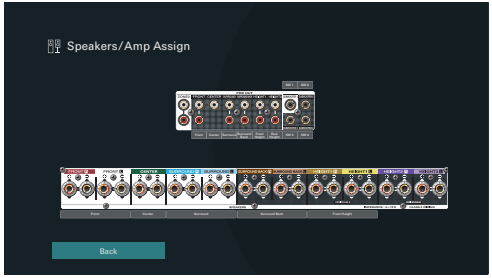
This unit has a built-in 9-channel power amplifier. In addition to the basic 5.1-channel system, a variety of speaker systems can be configured by changing the “Amp Assign” settings to suit the application, such as 7.1-channel systems, bi-amp connections and 2-channel systems for multi-zone playback. (☞ p. 205)

Perform “Amp Assign” settings to suit the number of rooms and speaker configuration to be installed. (☞ p. 205)

Playback speaker in each zone		“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2		
5.1-channel playback	2-channel (Pre-out)	Can be set in all “Amp Assign” modes.	47
7.1-channel playback		7.1ch + ZONE2 (Default)	48
9.1-channel playback		9.1ch	49
11.1-channel playback		11.1ch	50
7.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)		7.1ch (Bi-Amp)	53
Second front speakers		7.1ch + Front B	54
7.1-channel playback	2-channel (Speaker out)	7.1ch + ZONE2 (Default)	55
5.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)	2-channel (Speaker out)	5.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2	56
9.1-channel playback (using this unit as a preamplifier)	Not used	Preamplifier	43

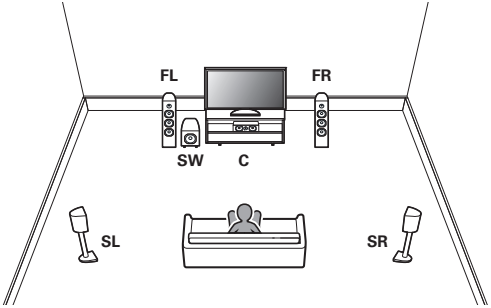
The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration.
The following pages provide basic connection examples.

- In addition to the connections described in p. 47 - 56, this unit allows for various speaker connections with the “Amp Assign” setting.
  Also refer to the menu screen in “View Terminal Config.” on the “Amp Assign” setting screen, which shows how to make connections in your environment.



Connecting 5.1-channel speakers

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.

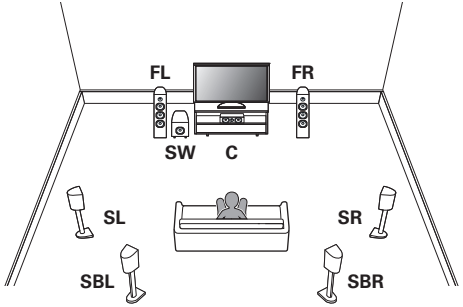


For each speaker connection, refer to “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42) or “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43).

Connecting 7.1-channel speakers

■ Example layout when using surround back speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is basic 7.1-channel system. (Adding surround back speakers to basic 5.1-channel system)



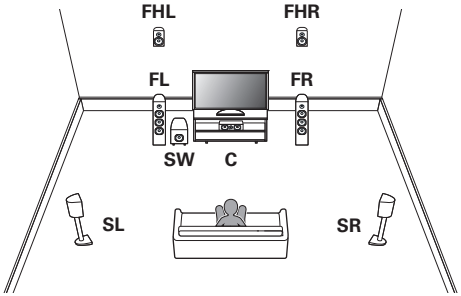
For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

- Set “Floor” to “5ch & SB” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)

■ Example layout when using height speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front height speakers.



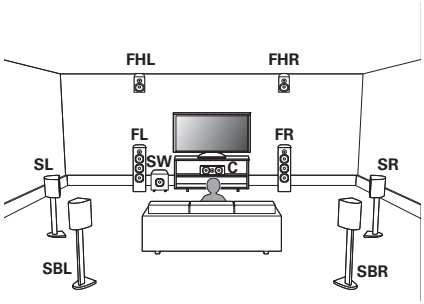
For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

- Set “Floor” to “5ch” and “Height Sp” (or “Dolby Sp”) to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)
- You can change the Front Height Speakers to any Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers in the “Amp Assign” - “Layout” setting. (☞ p. 209)

Connecting 9.1-channel speakers

■ Example layout when using surround back and one set of height speakers

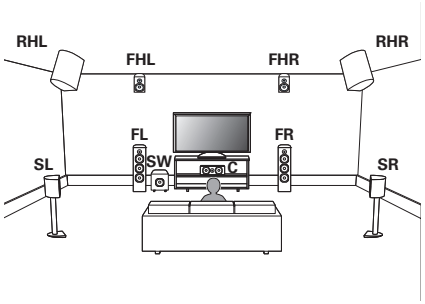


For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

- Set “Floor” to “5ch & SB” and “Height Sp” (or “Dolby Sp”) to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)
- You can change the Front Height Speakers to any Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers in the “Amp Assign” - “Layout” setting. (☞ p. 209)

■ Example layout when using two sets of height speakers



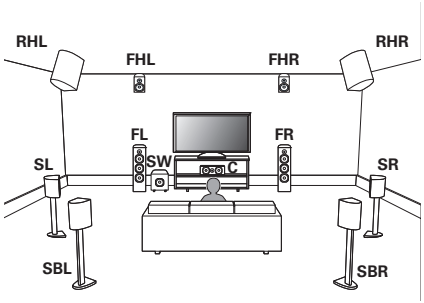
For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

- Set “Floor” to “5ch” and “Height Sp” (or “Dolby Sp”) to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)
- You can change the Front Height Speakers and Rear Height Speakers to any Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers in the “Amp Assign” - “Layout” setting. (☞ p. 209)

Connecting 11.1-channel speakers

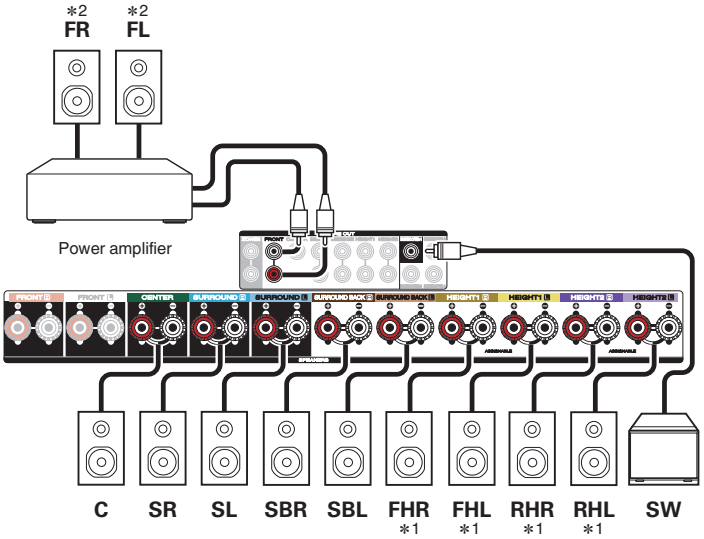
■ Example layout when using surround back and two sets of height speakers



For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

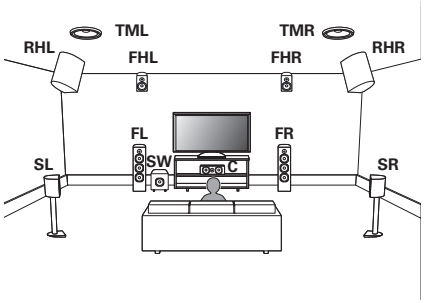
- Set “Floor” to “5ch & SB” and “Height Sp” (or “Dolby Sp”) to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)



∗1 You can change the Front Height Speakers and Rear Height Speakers to any Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers in the “Amp Assign” - “Layout” setting. (☞ p. 210)

∗2 You can connect the external power amplifier to the Height 2 or Surround back channel instead of the Front channel. Use the “Pre-out” setting in the menu to set the channel connected to the external power amplifier. (☞ p. 214)

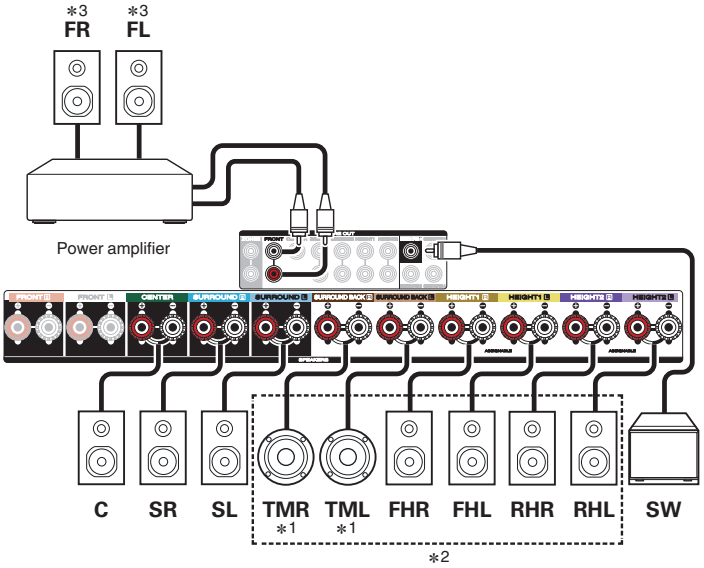
■ Example layout when using three sets of height speakers



For each speaker connection, refer to the following.

- “Connecting speakers to the speaker terminals” (☞ p. 42)
- “Connecting an external power amplifier” (☞ p. 43)

- Set “Floor” to “5ch” and “Height Sp” (or “Dolby Sp”) to “6ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)



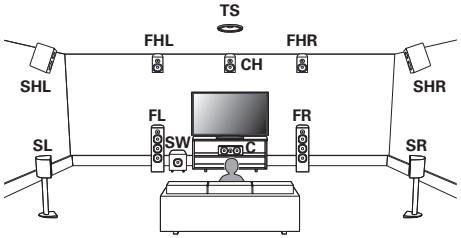
∗1 The Top Middle Speaker can be connected to the Surround Back terminal instead of the Surround Back Speaker.

∗2 You can change the Front Height Speakers, Top Middle speaker and Rear Height Speakers to any Height/Ceiling/Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers in the “Amp Assign” - “Layout” setting. (☞ p. 212)

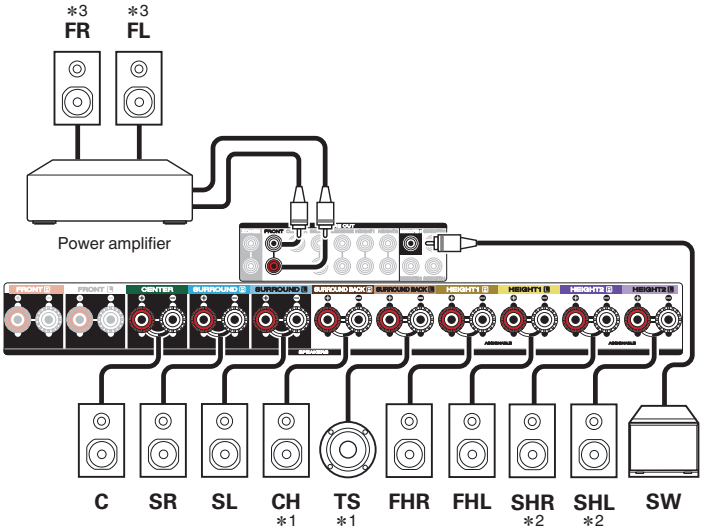
∗3 You can connect the external power amplifier to the Height 2 or Top Middle channel instead of the Front channel. Use the “Pre-out” setting in the menu to set the channel connected to the external power amplifier. (☞ p. 214)

■ Example layout for Auro-3D 11.1 channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.



- Set “Floor” to “5ch” and “Height Sp” to “6ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 207)
  Next, set “Height” - “Front Layout” to “Front Height & Center Height” and “Middle Layout” to “Surround Height & Top Surround”. (☞ p. 212)



∗1 The Top Surround and Center Height Speaker can be connected to the Surround Back terminal instead of the Surround Back Speaker.

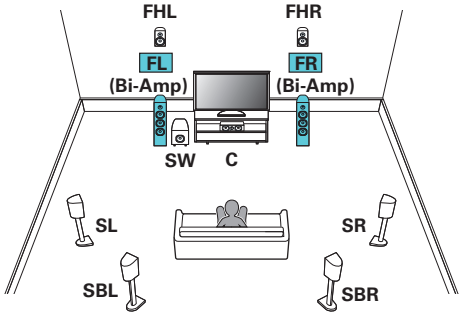
∗2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

∗3 You can connect the external power amplifier to the Height 2 or Top Surround / Center height channel instead of the Front channel. Use the “Pre-out” setting in the menu to set the channel connected to the external power amplifier. (☞ p. 214)

Connecting 7.1-channel speakers: Bi-amp connection of front speakers

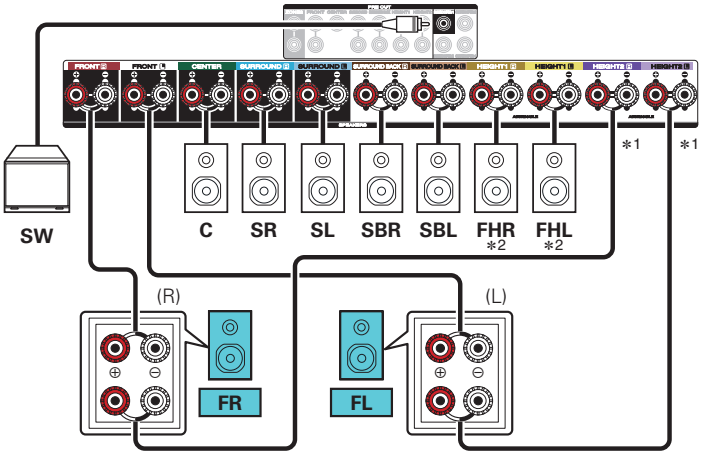
This system plays back 7.1-channels. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers. Bi-amp connection is a method to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminal and woofer terminal of a speaker that supports bi-amplification. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.

You can connect speakers for up to 9-channels for MAIN ZONE. When you connect speakers for 8 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.



NOTE

- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



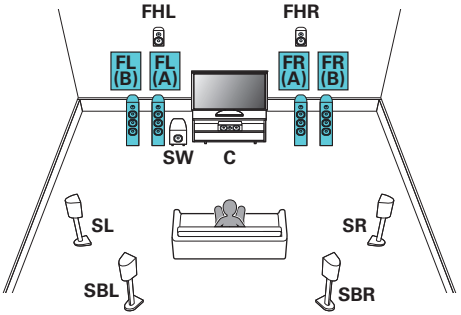
*1 The speaker terminals for bi-amp connections to the front speakers vary depending on the MAIN ZONE layout. Refer to "Amp Assign" - "Bi-Amp". (☞ p. 213)

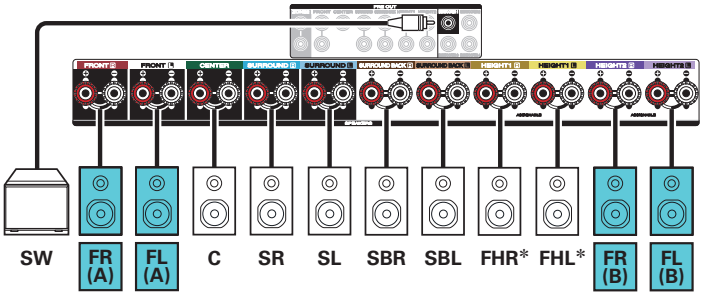
*2 The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 209)

Connecting 7.1-channel speakers: Second pair of front speakers

This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.

You can connect speakers for up to 9-channels for MAIN ZONE. When you connect speakers for 8 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.



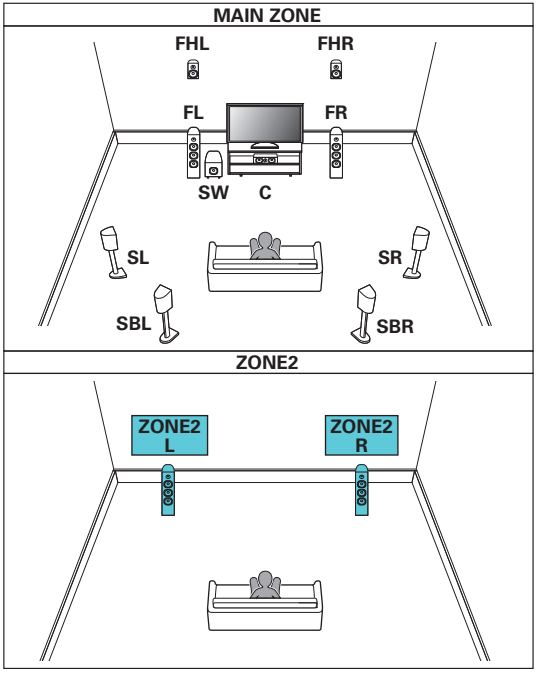


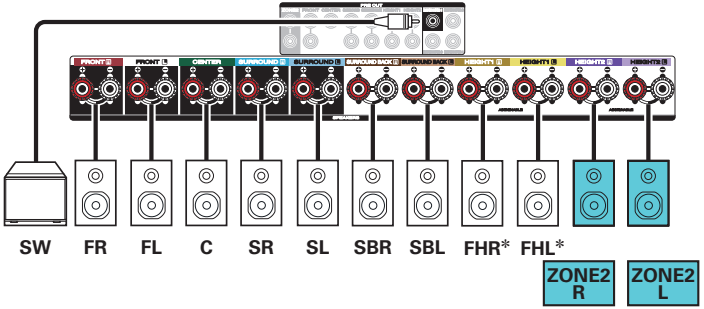
* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 209)

Connecting multi-zone speakers

■ 7.1-channel playback (MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel playback (ZONE2)

This type of configuration plays back 7.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2.
You can connect speakers for up to 9-channels for MAIN ZONE. When you connect speakers for 8 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.

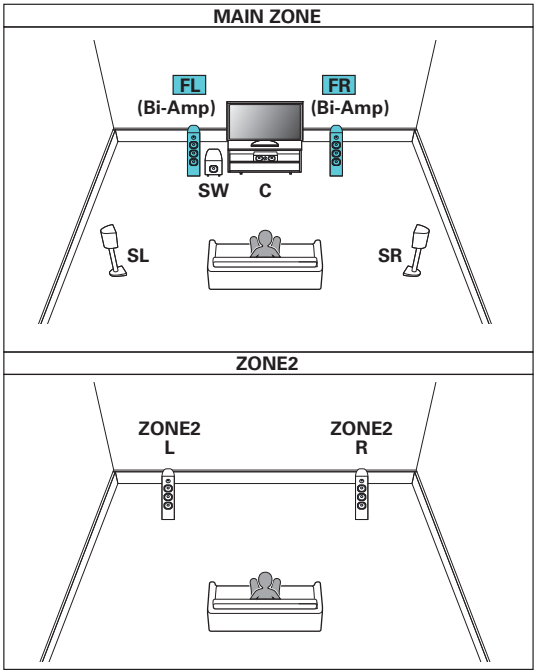


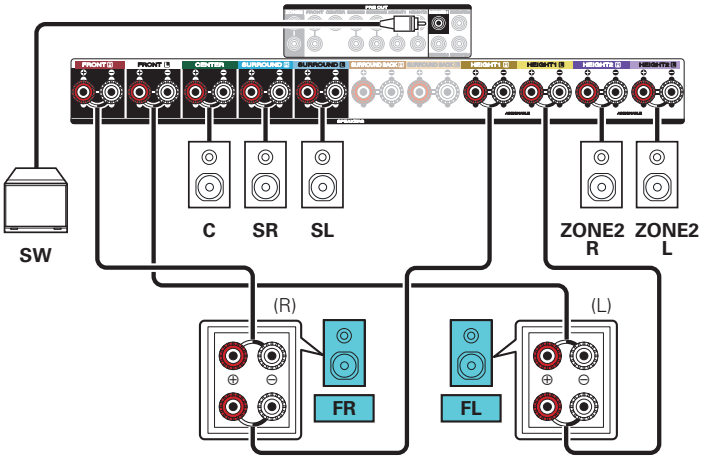


* The height speakers, ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers can be connected to the HEIGHT1 speaker terminals. Set the speaker to be connected from “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 209)

5.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers: MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel playback (ZONE2)

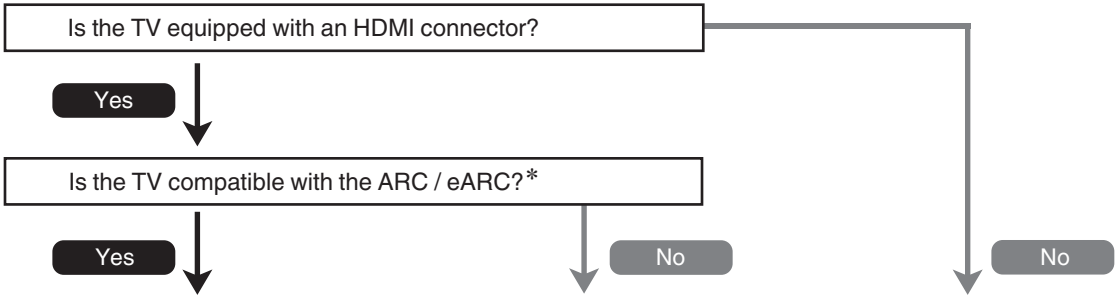
This type of configuration plays back 5.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers in MAIN ZONE.





Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.
How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.



“Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC / eARC” (☞ p. 58)

“Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC / eARC” (☞ p. 59)

You cannot connect the TV to this unit.

*** What is ARC and eARC?**
ARC (Audio Return Channel) sends audio back to this unit using the same HDMI cable that sends video from this unit to your TV.
This allows this unit to process the sound from your TV’s built-in tuner and apps.
TVs with eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel) port provide additional support for high bitrate multichannel audio (Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD and DTS:X).
Please refer to your TV Owner’s Manual for details about eARC support for your particular model.

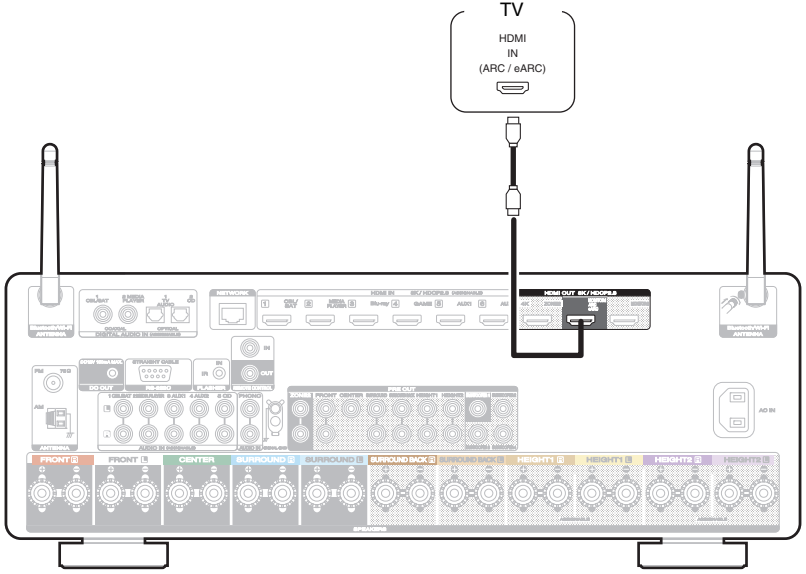
NOTE

- Use a TV with a 2 prong power plug for this unit. Do not connect a TV with a 3 prong power plug, as this may cause noise.

Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC / eARC

Using a high quality HDMI cable*, connect one end to the HDMI port labeled “eARC” or “ARC” on your TV. Connect the other end to the HDMI OUT MONITOR 1 port on this unit.

When a TV with eARC support is connected, the eARC function of this unit is enabled automatically and the television audio is played back. When a TV with ARC support is connected, set “ARC” in the menu to “On”. (☞ p. 182)

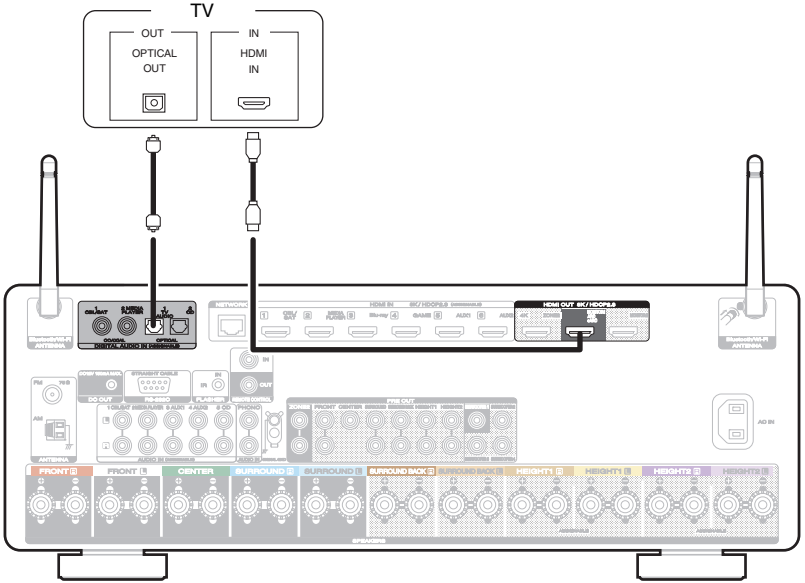


* For 4K TVs we recommend using an HDMI cable labeled “High Speed” and “with Ethernet” .
* For 8K TVs we recommend using an HDMI cable labeled “Ultra High Speed”.

- eARC function settings may be required depending on the eARC function-compatible television you are using. Make sure eARC is set to on if this setting exists on your television. For more information, check your television’s owner’s manual.
- Set “4K/8K Signal Format” to “8K Enhanced” in the menu to enjoy 8K video. (☞ p. 187)

Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC / eARC

Use an HDMI cable to connect the TV to this unit.
To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



Connecting a playback device

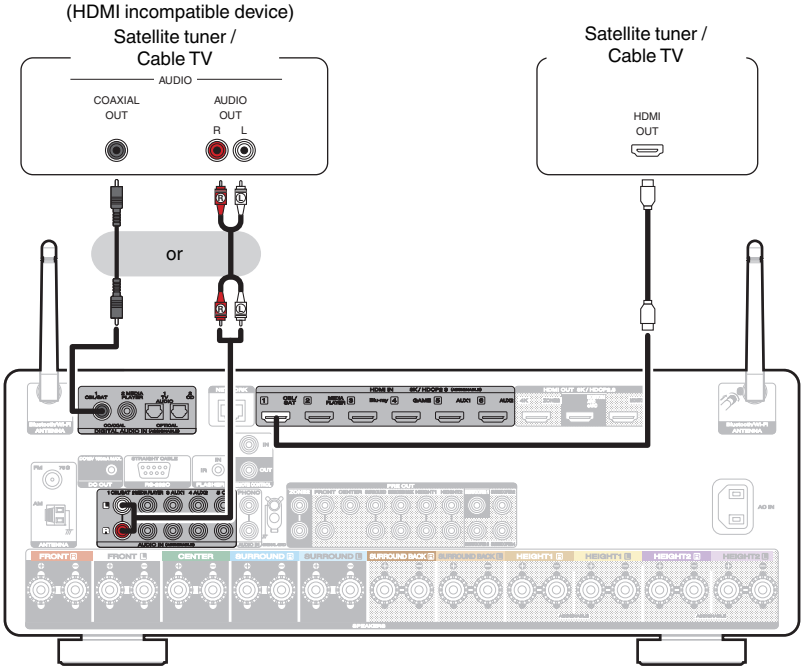
This unit is equipped with HDMI video input connectors and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).
Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.
If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.
In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 61)
- “Connecting a media player” (☞ p. 62)
- “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player” (☞ p. 63)
- “Connecting a game console or player device compatible with 8K” (☞ p. 64)
- “Connecting a turntable” (☞ p. 65)

- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See “Input Assign” on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. (☞ p. 190)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” to “TV”. (☞ p. 180)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3.

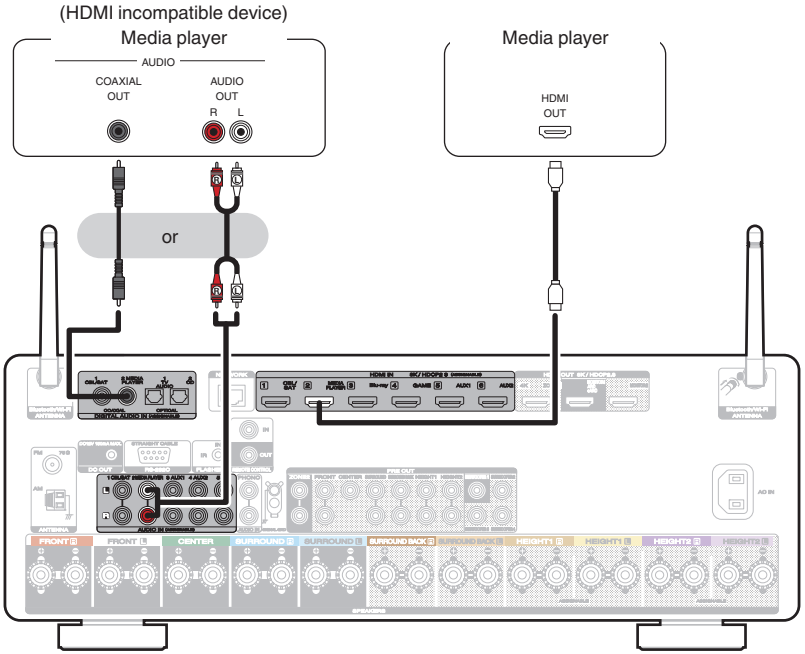
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



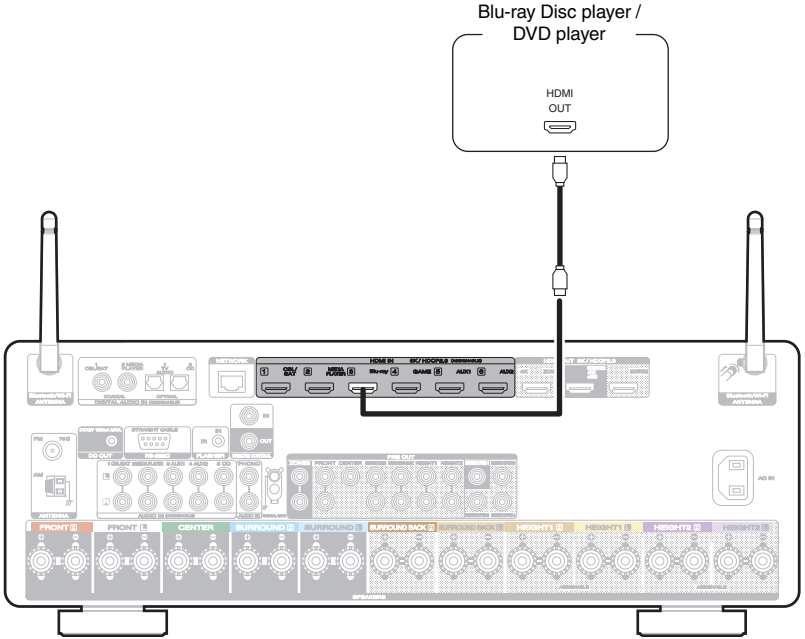
Connecting a media player

This explanation uses the connection with a media player as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



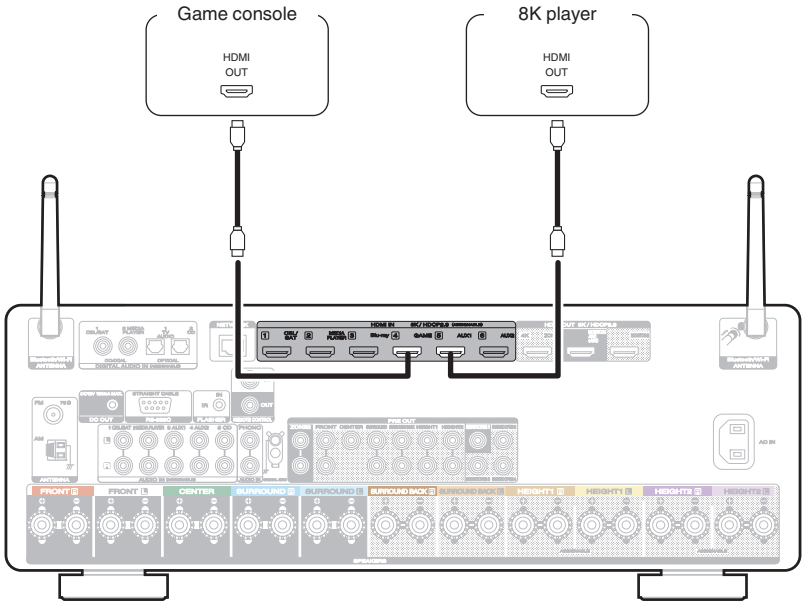
Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player

This explanation uses the connection with a Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



Connecting a game console or player device compatible with 8K

This unit supports 8K HDMI video signals.

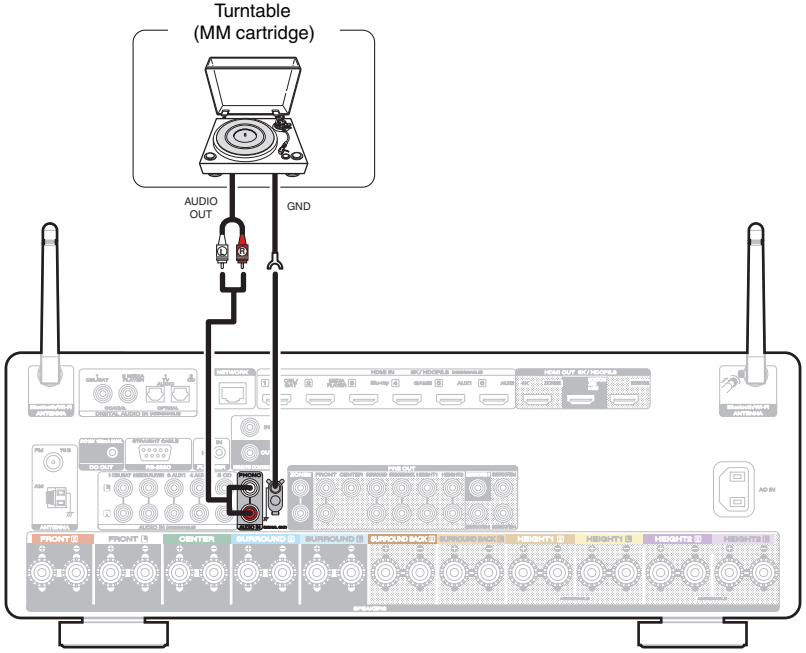


- Use a certified “Ultra High Speed HDMI cable” to enjoy 8K or 4K 120Hz video.
- Set “4K/8K Signal Format” to “8K Enhanced” in the menu to enjoy 8K video. (☞ p. 187)

Connecting a turntable

This unit is compatible with turntables equipped with a moving magnet (MM) phono cartridge. When you connect to a turntable with a low output moving coil (MC) cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.

If you set this unit's input source to "Phono" and you accidentally increase the volume without having a turntable connected, you may hear a hum noise from the speakers.

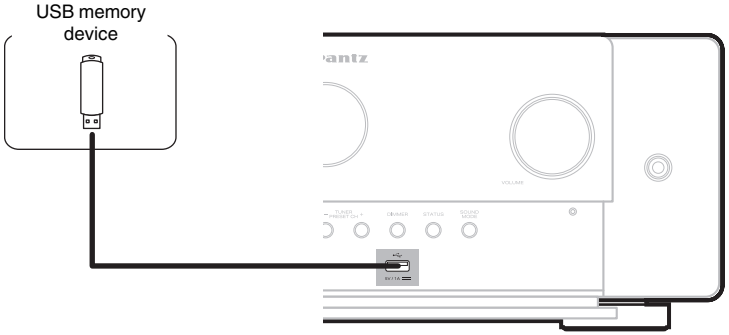


NOTE

- The earth terminal (SIGNAL GND) of this unit is not for safety grounding purposes. If this terminal is connected when there is a lot of noise, the noise can be reduced. Note that depending on the turntable, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.

Connecting a USB memory device to the USB port

For operating instructions see “Playing a USB memory device” (☞ p. 79).



- Marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device’s supplied AC adapter.

NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit’s USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.

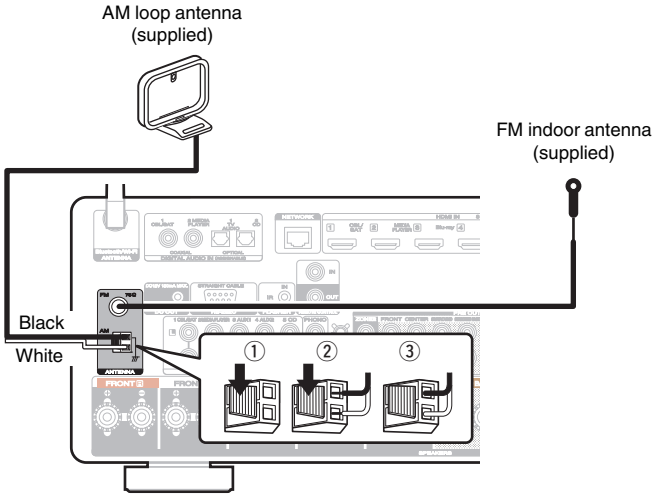
Connecting FM/AM antennas

Connect the antenna, tune in to a broadcast and then move the antenna to the location where there is least noise. Then use tape, etc. to fix the antenna in this location. (“Listening to FM/AM broadcasts” (☞ p. 90))

- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

NOTE

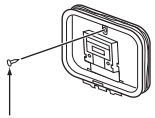
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.



■ Using the AM loop antenna

Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.

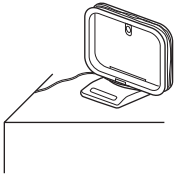


Nail, tack, etc.

Standing alone

Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

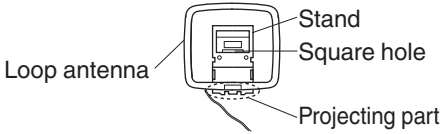
When assembling, refer to “AM loop antenna assembly”.

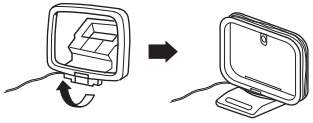


■ AM loop antenna assembly

1 **Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.**

2 **Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.**





Connecting to a home network (LAN)

This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN.

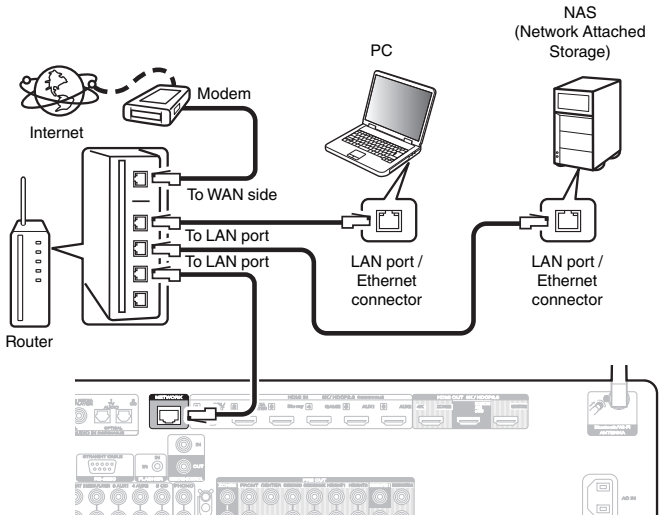
You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Playback of streaming music services
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Operation with the HEOS wireless multi-room sound system
- Firmware Update

For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

Wired LAN

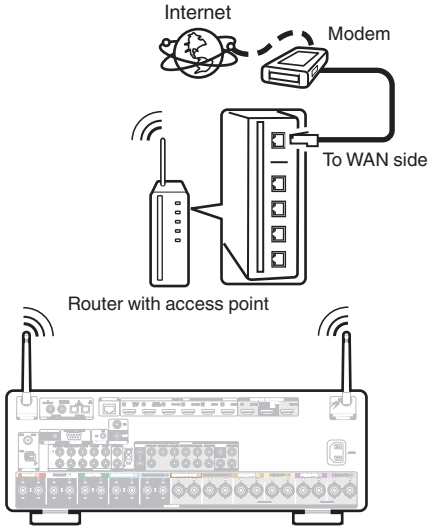
To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.



Wireless LAN

When connecting to the network via wireless LAN, connect the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity connection to the rear panel and stand them upright.

See “Wi-Fi Setup” on how to connect to a wireless LAN router. (☞ p. 231)



- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
  - Built-in DHCP server
    This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
  - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
    When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.
- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.
  If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.
- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in “Network”. (☞ p. 230)

NOTE

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.

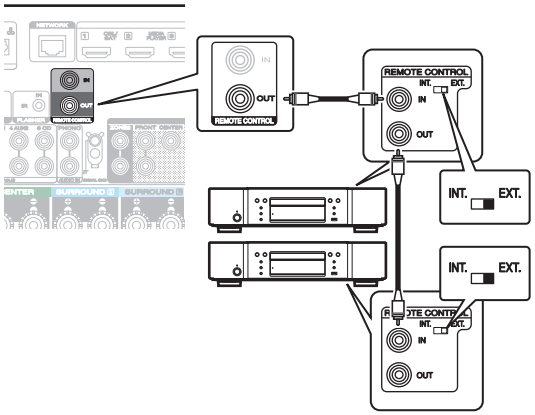
Connecting an external control device

REMOTE CONTROL jacks

If the remote control jack of this unit is connected with the remote control terminal of a Marantz device, the connected device can be controlled with the remote as a single system.

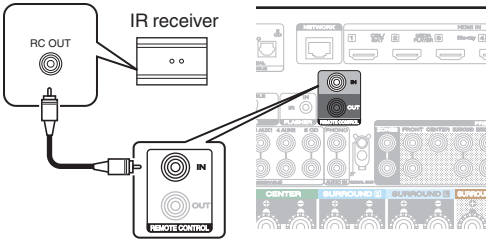
■ When controlling a connected device from this unit

- Connect the REMOTE CONTROL OUT jack of this unit to the REMOTE CONTROL IN jack of the device to be connected.
- Point the remote control operations towards this unit. The transmitted infrared signal from the remote control is received by the remote control infrared receiver of this unit and is sent to the other devices through the remote control jack.
- If there is a remote control switch on the back of the device to be connected with this unit, set it to “EXTERNAL” or “EXT.”.
- If you connect the Marantz power amp (excluding some models) to any of these terminals, the power of the power amp operates in conjunction with the power of this unit.



When controlling this unit from a connected device

- Connect to the REMOTE CONTROL IN jack of this unit from the REMOTE CONTROL OUT jack of the device to be connected.
- If you perform this operation, disable the remote sensor function of this unit using the “Remote lock function”. (☞ p. 150)

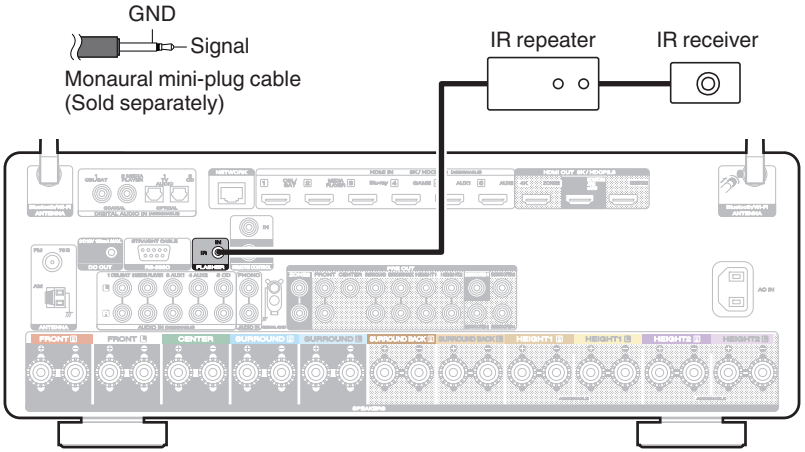


NOTE

- When the remote control signal receiving function is disabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

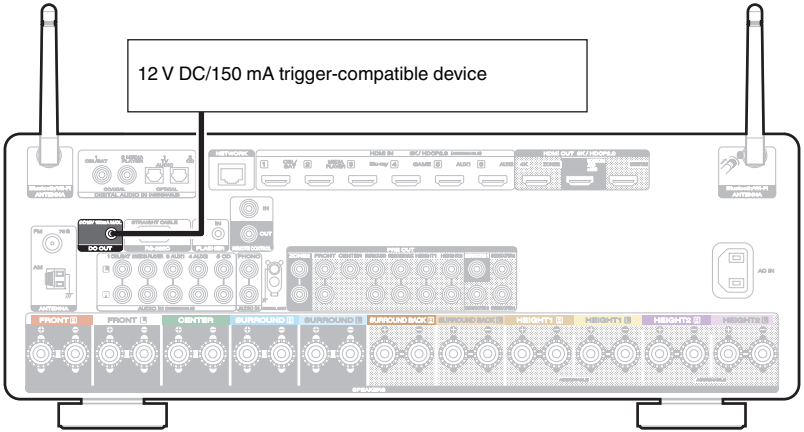
FLASHER IN jack

If a commercially available (sold separately) IR repeater is connected to the FLASHER IN jack of this unit, remote control operations can be performed even if this unit is installed in a place where the remote control signal may not reach, such as in a cabinet.



DC OUT jack

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit.
The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V DC/150 mA electrical signal.

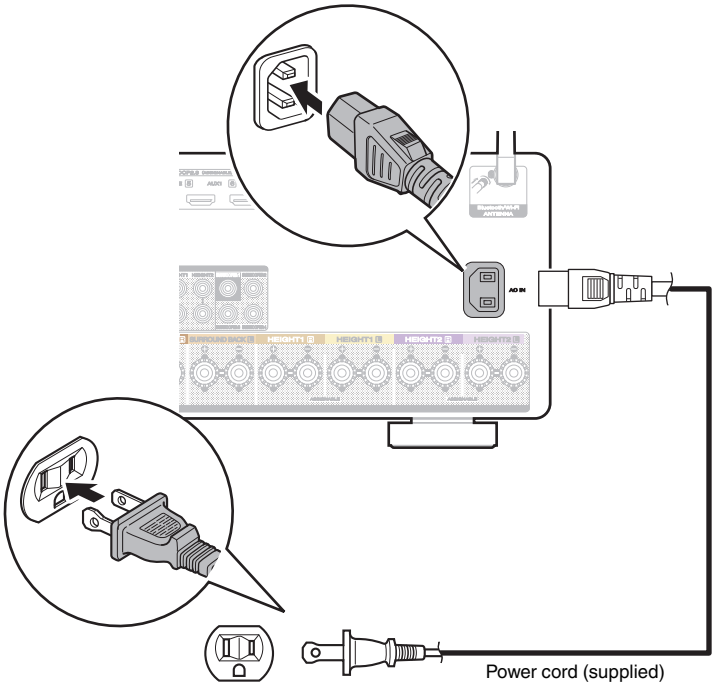


NOTE

- Use a monaural mini-plug cable for connecting the DC OUT jack. Do not use a stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V DC/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



■ Contents

Basic operation

Turning the power on 77
Selecting the input source 77
Adjusting the volume 78
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) 78
Selecting a sound mode 127

Playback a device

Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player 78
Playing a USB memory device 79
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device 83
Listening to audio on Bluetooth headphones 87
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts 90

Playback network audio/service

Listening to Internet Radio 98
Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS 100
Getting the HEOS App 104
AirPlay function 113
Spotify Connect function 116

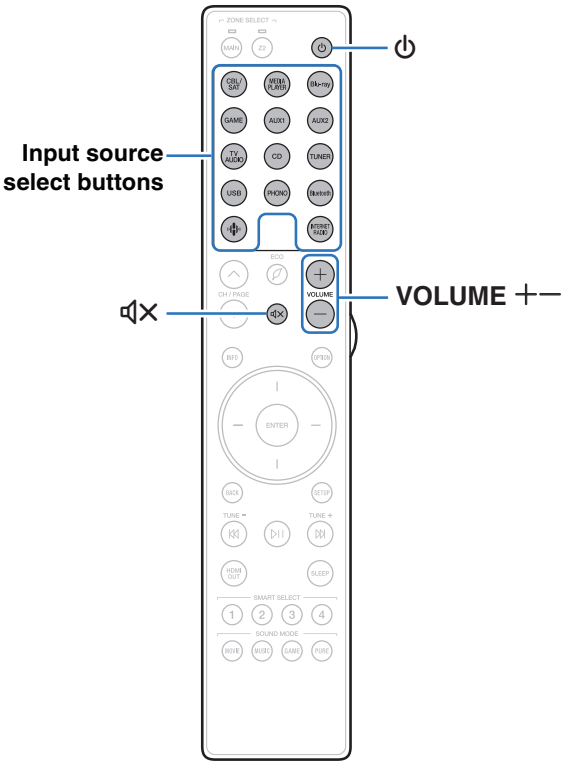
Convenience functions

Convenience functions 117
HDMI Control function 141
Sleep timer function 142
Smart select function 144
Panel lock function 148
Remote lock function 150

Other functions

Web control function 151
Playback in ZONE2 (Another room) 154

Basic operation



Turning the power on

1 Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ⏻ on the main unit.

Selecting the input source

1 Press the input source select button to be played back.

The desired input source can be selected directly.

- You can also select the input source by turning INPUT selector on the main unit.

Adjusting the volume

1 Use VOLUME +— to adjust the volume.

- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning VOLUME on the main unit.

Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

1 Press MUTE 🔇.

- "MUTE" appears on the display.
- 🔇 appears on the TV screen.

- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" in the menu. (☞ p. 174)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE 🔇 again.
- If 🔇 is displayed on the TV screen for more than 5 minutes when the "Screen Saver" is set to "On", the 🔇 symbol moves randomly over the TV screen. (☞ p. 187)

Playback a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player

The following describes the procedure for playing Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

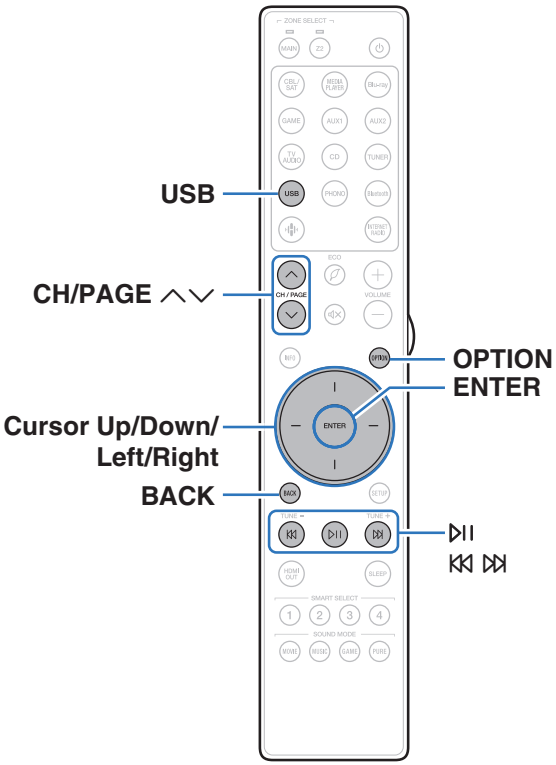
2 Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

3 Press Blu-ray or DVD to switch an input source for a player used for playback.

4 Play the Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player.

■ Surround playback (☞ p. 127)

Playing a USB memory device



- Playing back music files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT32” or “NTFS” format.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See “Playing back a USB memory devices” (☞ p. 289) for details.
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **Apple Lossless**
  - **DSD**

Playing files stored on USB memory devices

1 **Insert a “FAT32” or “NTFS” formatted USB memory device into the USB port.**

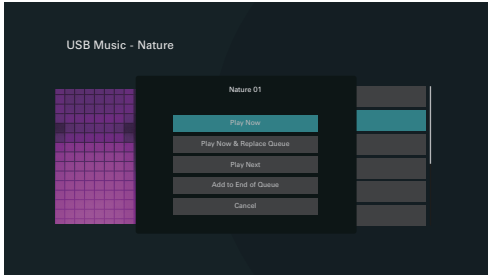
2 **Press USB to switch the input source to “USB”.**

3 **Select the name of this unit.**

4 **Browse the music on your USB memory device and select something to play.**

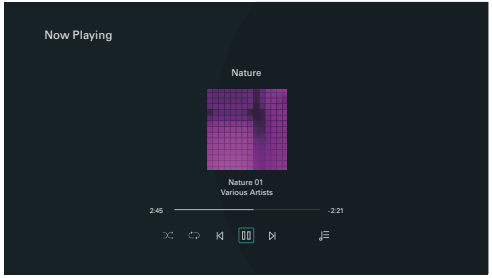
- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.



5 **Use cursor Up/Down to select the “Play Now” or “Play Now & Replace Queue”, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.



Operation buttons	Function
⏯	Playback / Pause
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ∧∨	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.

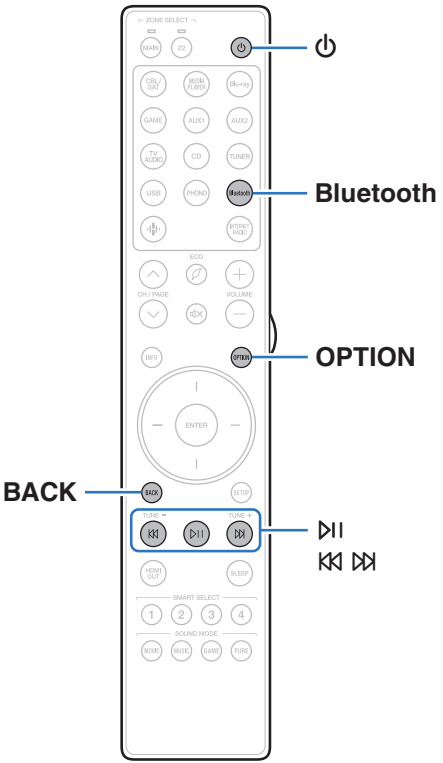
NOTE

- Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- When a USB memory device is connected to this unit, the unit loads all of the files on the USB memory device. Loading may take a while if the USB memory device contains a large number of folders and/or files.

Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 119)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 121)
- “Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)” (☞ p. 122)
- “Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)” (☞ p. 123)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 125)
- “Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)” (☞ p. 126)

Listening to music on a Bluetooth device



Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 98.4 ft/30 m.

NOTE

- To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.

Playing music from Bluetooth device

In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.
Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Connect the supplied external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity to the Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors on the rear panel. (☞ p. 25)
② Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

2 Press Bluetooth.

When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and “Pairing...” will appear on the display of the unit.

3 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

Connect to the Bluetooth device while “Pairing” is being displayed on the display of the unit.
Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 3.3 ft/1 m).

5 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.
- The next time the Bluetooth button is pressed on the remote control unit, this unit automatically connects to the last Bluetooth device that was connected.

Operation buttons	Function
⏯	Playback / Pause
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track

- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.

Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

1 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

2 Press and hold Bluetooth on the remote control unit for at least 3 seconds.

This unit will go into the pairing mode.

3 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- You can also enter pairing mode by pressing the OPTION button when the Bluetooth playback screen is displayed and selecting “Pairing Mode” from the displayed option menu.

NOTE

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Pairing with other Bluetooth devices” (☞ p. 85)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 119)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 121)
- “Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)” (☞ p. 122)
- “Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)” (☞ p. 123)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 125)
- “Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)” (☞ p. 126)

Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device

After pairing is completed, the Bluetooth device can be connected without performing any operations on this unit.

This operation also needs to be performed when switching the Bluetooth device for playback.

1 **If a Bluetooth device is currently connected, deactivate the Bluetooth setting of that device to disconnect it.**

2 **Activate the Bluetooth setting of the Bluetooth device to be connected.**

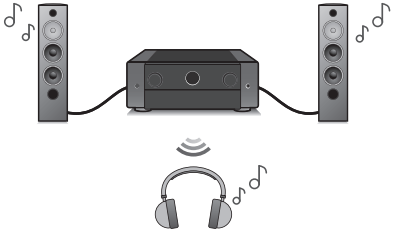
3 **Select this unit from the Bluetooth device list on your Bluetooth device.**

4 **Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.**

- The screen automatically switches to the “Bluetooth” playback screen if a Bluetooth device is connected while the power of this unit is on.
- When the “Network Control” setting of this unit is set to “Always On” and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (☞ p. 234)

Listening to audio on Bluetooth headphones

You can listen to audio playing through the MAIN ZONE of this unit on Bluetooth headphones.
Output audio from connected speakers and Bluetooth headphones simultaneously, or only using Bluetooth headphones.



(Output Mode: Bluetooth + Speakers)

(Output Mode: Bluetooth Only)

Listening to audio on Bluetooth headphones

1 **Set “Transmitter” to “On” from the “General” - “Bluetooth Transmitter” setting in the menu. (☞ p. 243)**

2 **Select “Output Mode”, and set audio output method.**

Bluetooth + Speakers (Default)**:**	Audio is output to Bluetooth headphones and main zone speakers. This simultaneous output is suitable for family movie night and other group activities.
Bluetooth Only:	Audio is output to Bluetooth headphones only. This is suitable for listening to music or watching movies by yourself at night when you need to keep quiet.

3 **Enter pairing mode on the Bluetooth headphones you want to connect to this unit.**

4 **Select “Device List” and select the name of the Bluetooth headphones from the device list.**

5 **Adjust the volume of connected Bluetooth headphones after the connection is completed.**

- “Output Mode” can also be set from “Bluetooth Transmitter” in the option menu.
- A2DP profile-compatible Bluetooth speakers can be connected following the same steps used to connect Bluetooth headphones.

NOTE

- Bluetooth headphones volume cannot be adjusted from this unit. Adjust volume of your Bluetooth headphones.
- Stereo mode is fixed as the sound mode when using Bluetooth headphones. Any sound modes and other audio settings are not reflected in audio output on Bluetooth headphones.
  Audio settings, sound modes and All Zone Stereo mode are not available while using Bluetooth headphones and “Output Mode” is set to “Bluetooth Only”.
- Audio may be delayed when sent over Bluetooth.
- Bluetooth headphones cannot be connected when use a Bluetooth input source in any zone.
  Furthermore, selecting a Bluetooth input source in any zone will terminate the connection between this unit and Bluetooth headphones.
- Bluetooth headphones cannot be connected when this unit is grouped in the HEOS App.

CAUTION:
Using Bluetooth headphones without a volume adjustment function

- In order to avoid hearing loss, do not connect Bluetooth headphones that lack volume adjustment functionality.
- Bluetooth headphone volume may be unexpectedly loud when this unit connects to Bluetooth headphones.
- Bluetooth headphone volume cannot be adjusted from this unit.

Reconnecting to a Bluetooth headphones

Follow any of the steps below to reconnect the most recently used Bluetooth headphones:

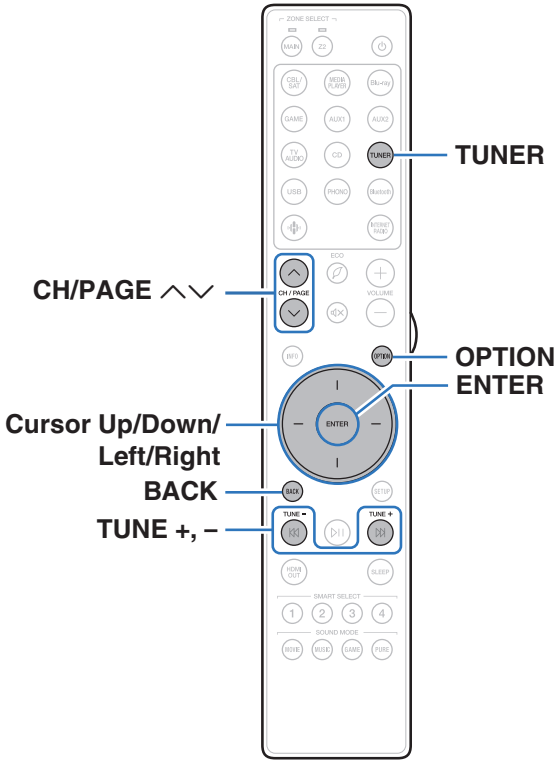
- Reconnect to this unit with Bluetooth headphone's reconnect function.
- Go to “Bluetooth Transmitter” and then select “Reconnect” within the options menu.
- If “Output Mode” is set to “Bluetooth + Speakers”, this unit will automatically connect to the most recently used Bluetooth headphones when power is turned on.
- Select the device you wish to connect from the “Device List” under “Bluetooth Transmitter” in the menu. (☞ p. 243)

Disconnecting Bluetooth headphones

Complete any of the following steps to disconnect your Bluetooth headphones:

- Turn off your Bluetooth headphones.
- Go to “Bluetooth Transmitter” and then select “Disconnect” within the options menu.
- In the setup menu, go to “General” - “Bluetooth Transmitter”, and set “Transmitter” to Off. (☞ p. 243)

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts



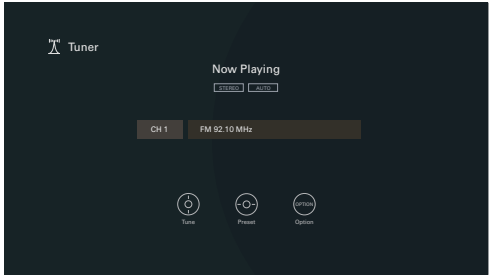
You can use the built-in tuner of this unit to listen to FM broadcasts and AM broadcasts.
Make sure the FM antenna and AM loop antenna are connected to this unit first.

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

1 **Connect the antenna. (“Connecting FM/AM antennas” (☞ p. 67))**

2 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to “Tuner”.**

【TV screen】



3 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “FM/AM”, then press ENTER.**

This displays the reception band input screen.

5 **Use cursor Left/Right to select “FM” or “AM”, then press ENTER.**

FM:	When listening to an FM broadcast.
AM:	When listening to an AM broadcast.

6 **Press TUNE + or TUNE – to select the station you want listen to.**

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.

- The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of “Auto” mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and “Manual” mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is “Auto”. You can also use “Direct Tune” to tune in by entering the frequency directly.
  In “Auto” mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the “Manual” mode or “Direct Tune” mode to tune in.

Operation buttons	Function
TUNE +, –	Selects the radio station (up/down)
CH/PAGE ∧∨	Selects preset radio stations
Cursor Up/Down	Selects the radio station (up/down)
Cursor Left/Right	Selects preset radio stations

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)” (☞ p. 92)
- “Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)” (☞ p. 93)
- “Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)” (☞ p. 93)
- “Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)” (☞ p. 94)
- “Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)” (☞ p. 95)
- “Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)” (☞ p. 96)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 119)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 121)
- “Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)” (☞ p. 122)
- “Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)” (☞ p. 123)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 125)
- “Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)” (☞ p. 126)

Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Direct Tune”, then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Up/Down to select a number, then press cursor Right.**

- If cursor Left is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.

4 **Repeat step 3 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.**

5 **When setting is completed, press ENTER.**

The preset frequency is tuned in.

Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM and AM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with “Auto” mode, change the mode to “Manual” and tune in manually.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Tune Mode”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to select the tune mode, then press ENTER.**

Auto:	Automatically search for and tune to a receivable radio station.
Manual:	Manually change the frequency one step at a time each time the button is pressed.

Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

A maximum of 56 radio stations can be automatically preset.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Auto Preset Memory”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Press ENTER.**

The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

- When presetting is completed, “Completed” is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.

- The preset memory is overwritten.

Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily.

Up to 56 stations can be preset.

1 **Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset. (“Listening to FM/AM broadcasts” (☞ p. 91))**

2 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Preset Memory”, then press ENTER.**

The list of already preset channels is displayed.

4 **Use cursor Up/Down to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.**

The current broadcast station that is preset.

- To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Channel	Default settings
1 – 8	92.10 / 92.30 / 92.50 / 92.70 / 93.10 / 93.50 / 93.70 / 94.10 MHz
9 – 16	94.30 / 94.50 / 94.70 / 94.90 / 95.10 / 95.30 / 95.50 / 95.70 MHz
17 – 24	98.10 / 98.30 / 98.50 / 98.70 / 98.90 / 99.10 / 100.10 / 100.30 MHz
25 – 32	100.50 / 100.70 / 100.90 / 101.10 / 101.30 / 101.50 / 101.70 / 101.90 MHz
33 – 40	103.10 / 103.30 / 103.50 / 103.70 / 103.90 / 104.10 / 104.30 / 104.50 MHz
41 – 48	104.70 / 104.90 / 105.10 / 105.30 / 105.50 / 105.70 / 105.90 / 106.10 MHz
49 – 56	106.30 / 106.50 / 106.70 / 106.90 / 107.10 / 107.30 / 107.50 / 107.90 MHz

Listening to preset stations

1 **Use CH/PAGE ∧∨ to select the desired preset channel.**

- You can also select preset broadcast stations by pressing TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – on the main unit.

Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it.
Up to 8 characters can be input.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Preset Name”, then press ENTER.**

The “Preset Name” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name.**

4 **Use cursor Up/Down to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

5 **Use cursor Up/Down to select a name label, then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you edit the Preset Name is displayed.

- If you select “Set Defaults”, then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

6 **Enter the characters, then press “OK”.**

7 **Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**

Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

Perform auto preset memory to save all the broadcasting stations that can be received in the memory. Selecting a broadcast station becomes easier by skipping unnecessary memories.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Preset Skip”, then press ENTER.**

The “Preset Skip” screen is displayed.

3 **❑ To set the stations you want to skip by groups**

① Use cursor Left/Right to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
② Press cursor Up to select “Set ∗ – ∗ to Skip”, then press ENTER.
Skip all the broadcast stations that are included in the selected group “∗-∗”.
(∗ is the selected group number.)

❑ To set the stations you want to skip by stations

① Use cursor Left/Right to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
② Use cursor Up/Down to select the broadcast station you want to skip.
③ Use cursor Left/Right to select “Skip”.
The station you selected is not displayed.

4 **Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**

Cancelling Preset Skip

1 **While the “Preset Skip” screen is displayed, use cursor Left/Right to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**

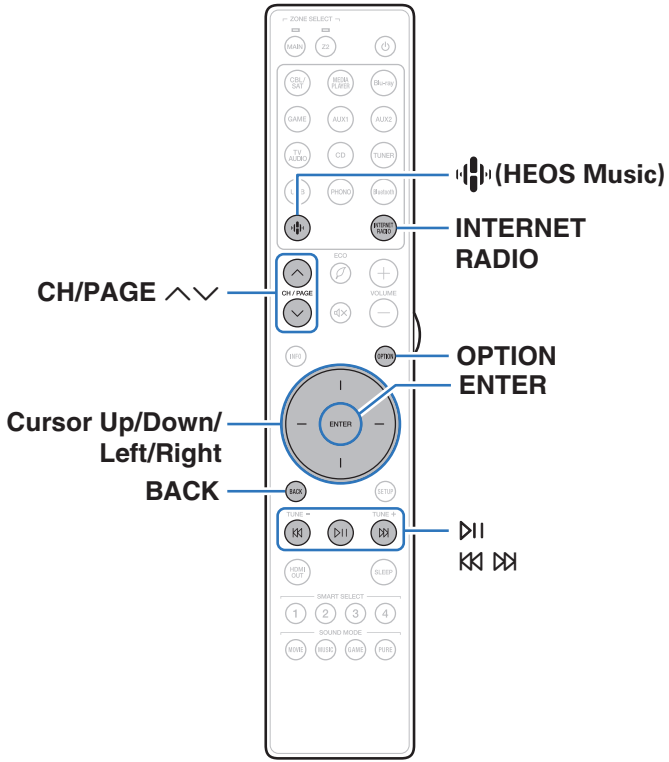
3 **Use cursor Left/Right to select “On”.**

The skip is cancelled.

NOTE

- “Preset Skip” cannot be cancelled for groups.

Listening to Internet Radio



- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet Radio station list on this unit the database service provided by TuneIn Radio service.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See “Playing back Internet Radio” (☞ p. 292) for details.
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**

Listening to Internet Radio

1 Press INTERNET RADIO.

- You can also press (HEOS Music). Use cursor Up/Down to select “TuneIn Internet Radio”, then press ENTER.

2 Select the station you want to play.

Operation buttons	Function
⏯ *	Playback / Pause
⏮ ⏭ *	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ∧∨	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

* Enabled when playing Podcasts.

- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit’s STATUS is pressed.

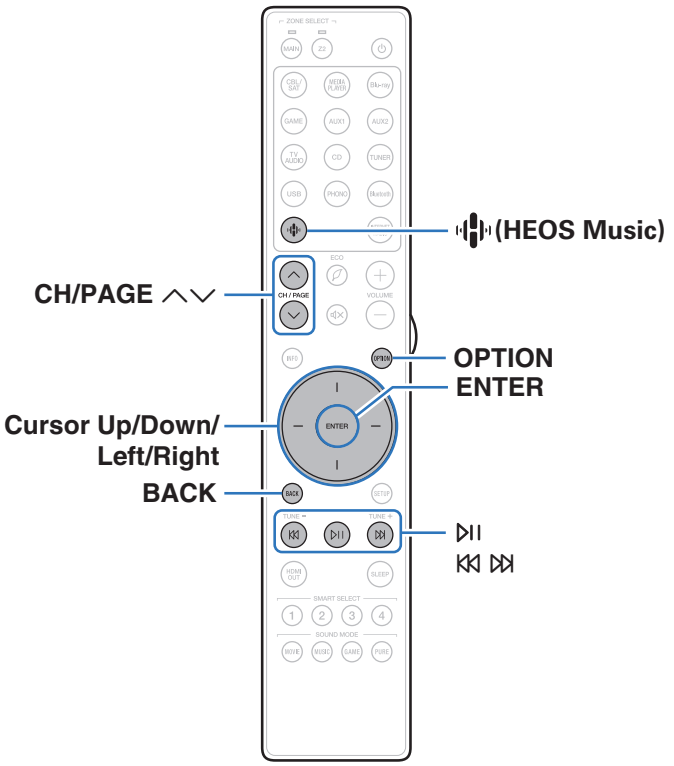
NOTE

- The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adding to HEOS Favorites” (☞ p. 118)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 119)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 121)
- “Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)” (☞ p. 122)
- “Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)” (☞ p. 123)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 125)
- “Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)” (☞ p. 126)

Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS



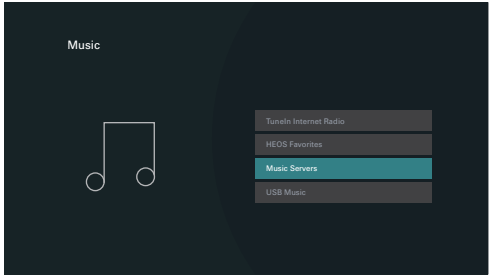
- This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) from DLNA compatible servers including PCs and NAS devices on your network.
- Supported file formats:
  For details, see “Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS” (☞ p. 291).
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **Apple Lossless**
  - **DSD**

Playing back files stored on a PC or NAS

Use this procedure to play music files or playlists stored on DLNA files servers on your local network.

1 **Press (HEOS Music).**

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Music Servers”, then press ENTER.**

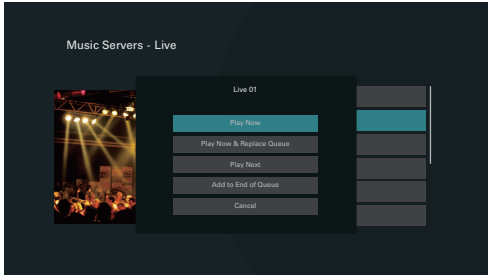


3 **Select the name of your networked PC or NAS (Network Attached Storage) server.**

4 **Browse the music on your PC/NAS and select something to play.**

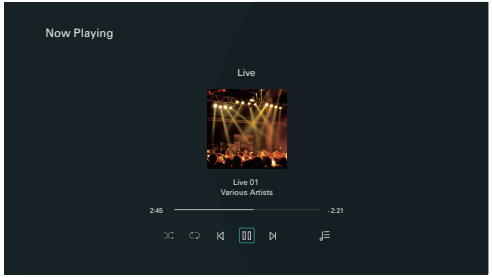
- When you select something to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.



5 **Use cursor Up/Down to select the “Play Now” or “Play Now & Replace Queue”, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.



Operation buttons	Function
⏯	Playback / Pause
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ∧∨	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit’s STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.

NOTE

- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 119)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 121)
- “Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)” (☞ p. 122)
- “Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)” (☞ p. 123)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 125)
- “Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)” (☞ p. 126)

Getting the HEOS App

You can use many online music streaming services from the HEOS App. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.

Download the HEOS App for iOS or Android by searching App Store, Google Play store or Amazon Appstore for “HEOS”.

HEOS Account

HEOS Accounts can be registered in “HEOS Account” (☞ p. 238) in the menu of this unit or by tapping “Music” tab - “Settings” icon ⚙ in the HEOS App.

■ What is a HEOS Account?

A HEOS Account is master account or “keychain” for managing all of your HEOS music services with one single username and password.

■ Why do I need a HEOS Account?

With the HEOS Account you just have to enter your music services login names and passwords one time. This allows you to easily and quickly use multiple controller apps on different devices.

You just log into your HEOS Account on any device and you will have access to all of your associated music services, play history and custom playlists, even if you are at a friend’s house listening to music on their HEOS system.

■ Signing up for a HEOS Account

You will be instructed to signup for a HEOS Account the first time you try to access any music service from the main “Music” menu of the HEOS App.

■ Changing your HEOS Account

1 **Tap the “Music” tab.**

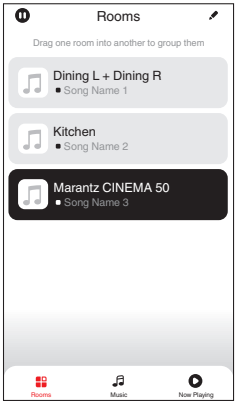
2 **Select the Settings icon ⚙ in the upper left corner of the screen.**

3 **Select “HEOS Account”.**

4 **Change your location, change your password, delete your account or sign out of your account.**

Playing from streaming music services

A music service is an online music company that provides access to vast music collections via free and/or paid subscriptions. Depending upon your geographical location, there are several options to choose from.



NOTE

- The HEOS App and brand is not affiliated with any manufacturer of any mobile device. Availability of music services may vary by region. Not all services may be available at time of purchase. Some services may be added or discontinued from time to time based on decisions of the music service providers or others.

■ Selecting a room/device

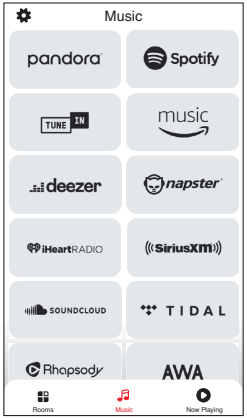
1 Tap the “Rooms” tab, and select “Marantz CINEMA 50” if there are multiple products with HEOS Built-in.

- Tap the Pencil icon at the top right to switch edit mode. You can change the displayed name.

■ Selecting the music track or station from music sources

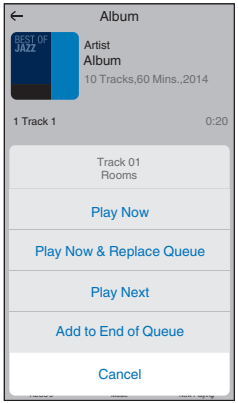
1 **Tap the “Music” tab and select a music source.**

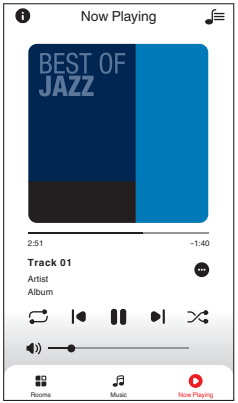
- All music services displayed may not be available in your location.



2 Browse the music to play.

After selecting a music track or radio station the app will automatically change to the “Now Playing” screen.





- When you select a music track to play you will be asked how you want to queue up your music.

Play Now:	Inserts the item into the queue after the currently playing track and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Now & Replace Queue:	Clears the queue and plays the selected item immediately.
Play Next:	Inserts the item into the queue after the current song and plays it when the current song ends.
Add to End of Queue:	Adds the item to the end of the queue.

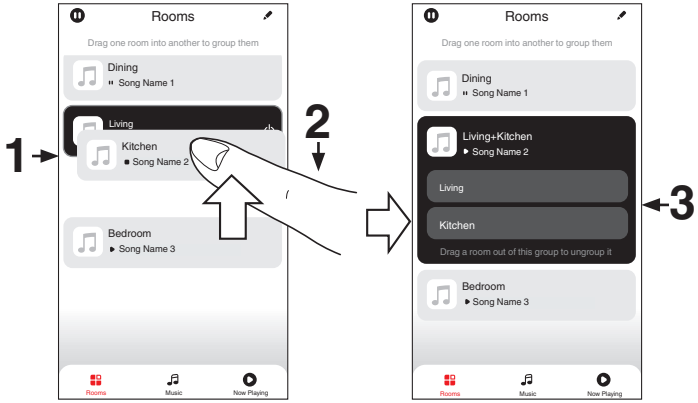
- When you select a radio station the following items are displayed.

Play Now:	Plays the selected item immediately.
Add to HEOS Favorites:	Adds to HEOS Favorites.

Listening to the same music in multiple rooms

This system is a true multi-room audio system. You can create one or more HEOS groups to automatically synchronize audio playback between multiple products with HEOS Built-in so that the music playing different rooms is perfectly in sync and always sounds amazing! You can easily add up to 32 products to your system in total. You can group up to 16 individual products to have them play the same song fully synchronized.

■ Grouping rooms



1 **Press and hold your finger on room that is not playing music.**

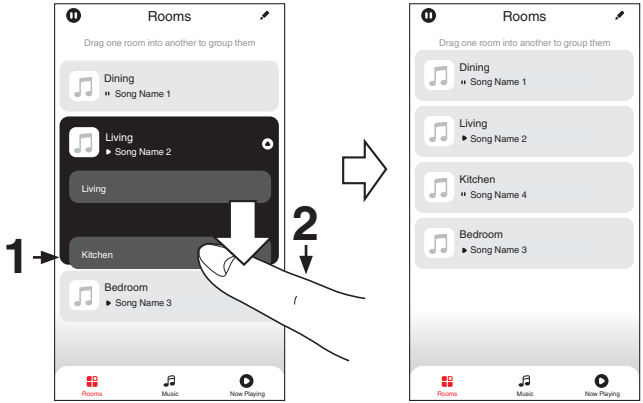
2 **Drag it into the room that is playing music and lift your finger.**

3 **The two rooms will be grouped together into a single device group and both rooms will be playing the same music in perfect sync.**

■ Ungrouping rooms

1 **Press and hold your finger on room that you want to remove from the group.**

2 **Drag it out of the group and lift your finger.**



NOTE

- You can not remove the first room that started playing the music before grouping.

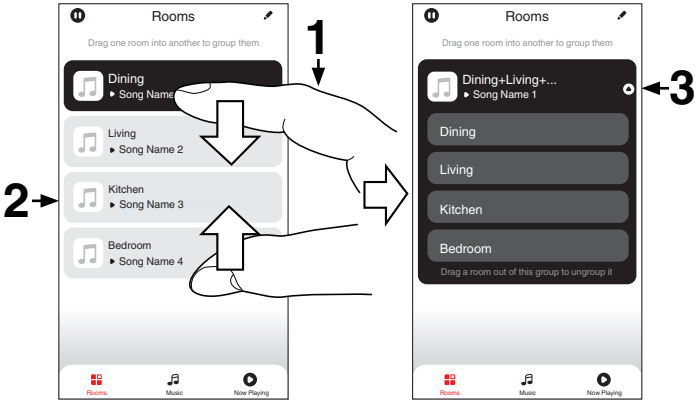
■ Grouping all rooms (party mode)

You can easily group 16 rooms together into Party Mode by using a "pinch" gesture.

1 **Place two fingers on the screen over the list of rooms.**

2 **Quickly pinch your two fingers together and release.**

3 **All of your rooms will be joined together and begin playing the same music in perfect sync.**



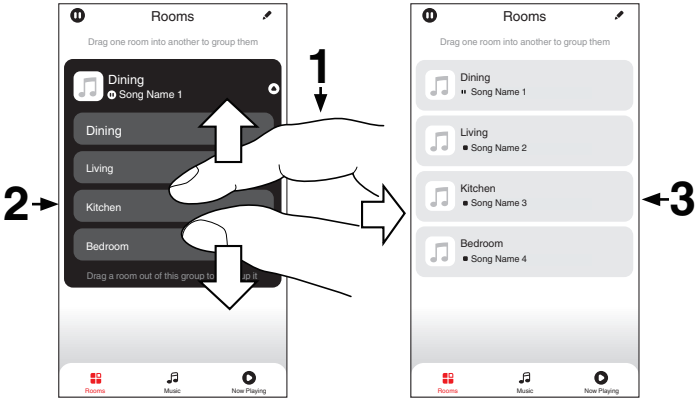
■ Ungrouping all rooms

You can easily ungroup all of your rooms and exit Party Mode by using a "spread" gesture.

1 **Place two fingers close together on the screen over list of rooms.**

2 **Quickly spread your two fingers apart from each other and release.**

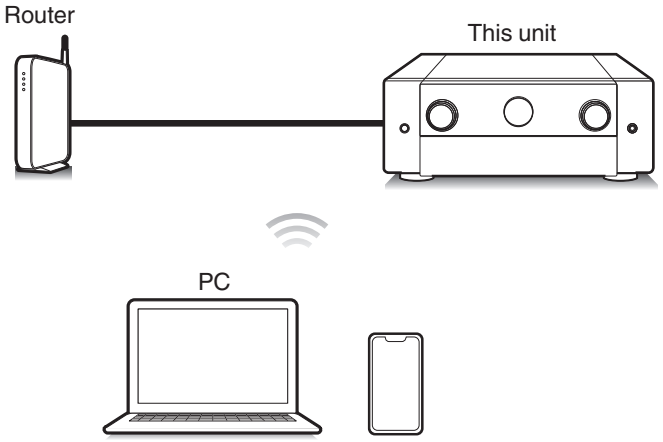
3 **All of your rooms will be ungrouped.**



AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.

- Source input will be switched to “HEOS Music” when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.



This unit supports AirPlay 2.

Sync multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices/speakers for simultaneous playback.

- This unit supports AirPlay 2 and requires iOS 11.4 or later.

Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

If you update your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” to iOS 10.0.2 or later, you can stream music stored in your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” directly to this unit.

1 Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.

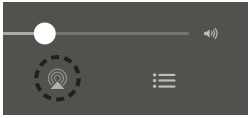
- For details, see your device’s manual.

2 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

AirPlay icon is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

3 Tap the AirPlay icon and select this unit.

[Example] iOS 15



[Example] iOS 10

Playing iTunes music with this unit

1 Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

2 Turn this unit ON.

Set “Network Control” to “Always On” for this unit. (☞ p. 234)

NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

3 Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon to select this unit.

[Example] iTunes

4 Choose a song and click play in iTunes.

The music will stream to this unit.

NOTE

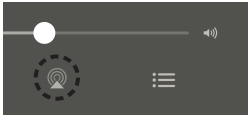
- In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level.
  You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

Play a song from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad on multiple synced devices (AirPlay 2)

Songs from an iPhone, iPod touch or iPad operating iOS 11.4 or later can be synced with multiple AirPlay 2 supported devices for simultaneous playback.

1 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

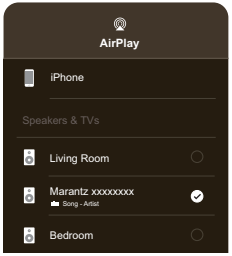
AirPlay icon is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.



2 Tap the AirPlay icon and select this unit.

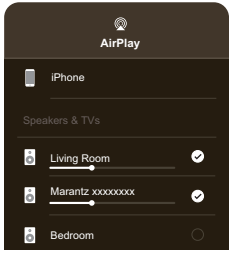
Displays a list of devices/speakers that can be played back on the same network.

- A circle is displayed to the right of AirPlay 2 compatible devices.



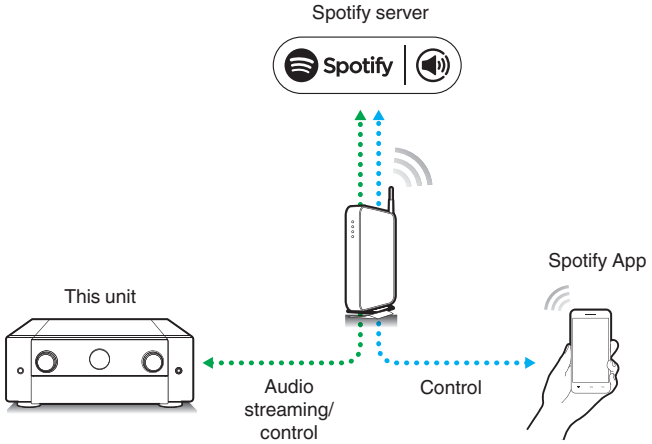
3 Tap the devices/speakers you want to use.

- Multiple AirPlay 2 compatible devices can be selected.



Spotify Connect function

Spotify is all the music you'll ever need. Millions of songs available instantly. Just search for the music you love, or let Spotify play you something great. Spotify works on your phone, tablet, computer and home speakers. So you'll always have the perfect soundtrack for whatever you're doing. Now you can enjoy Spotify with your free account as well as Premium account.
Use your phone, tablet or computer as a remote control for Spotify.
Go to **www.spotify.com/connect** to learn how.
The Spotify software is subject to third party licenses found here:
www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses



Playing Spotify music with this unit

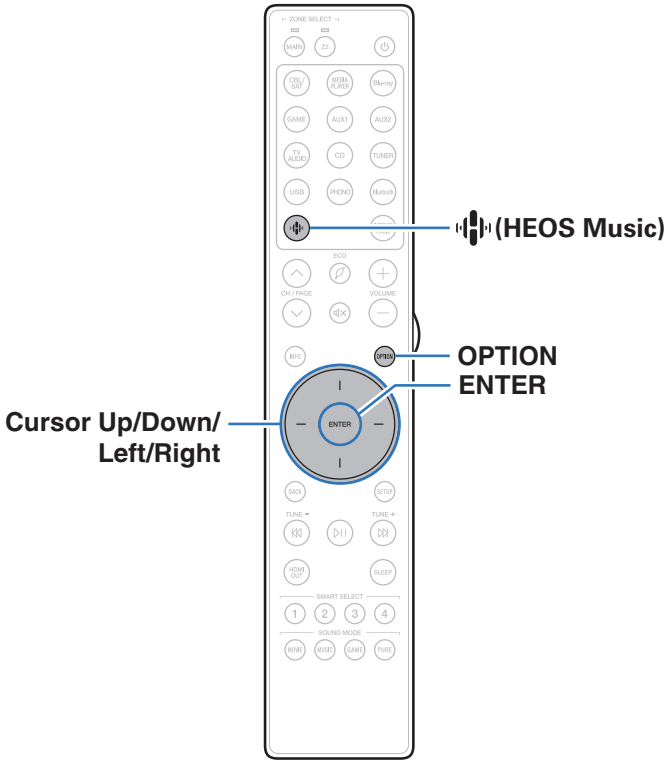
Download the "Spotify App" onto your Android or iOS device beforehand.

1. **Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.**
2. **Launch the Spotify App.**
3. **Play back the Spotify track.**
4. **Tap the Spotify icon to select the unit.**
   The music will stream to this unit.

Convenience functions

This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.

These functions can only be set in the MAIN ZONE.



Adding to HEOS Favorites

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**

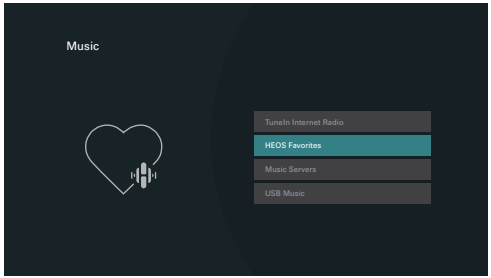
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Add to HEOS Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

Playing back HEOS Favorites

1 **Press (HEOS Music).**

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “HEOS Favorites”, then press ENTER.**



3 **Browse the content and select something to play.**

Deleting a HEOS Favorites

1 **While the HEOS Favorites content list is displayed, use cursor Up/Down to select the item you want to remove from HEOS Favorites, then press OPTION.**

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Remove from HEOS Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)

This function adjusts the center channel frequency band to enhance the dialog in the movies and vocals in music for easier listening.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Dialog Enhancer”, then press ENTER.**

The “Dialog Enhancer” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to select your favorite enhancement effect.**

Low / Medium / High:	Enhances the dialog and vocals.
Off (Default)**:**	Does not enhance the dialog or vocals.

4 **Press ENTER.**

- “Dialog Enhancer” settings are stored for each source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.

Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Channel Level Adjust”, then press ENTER.**

The “Channel Level Adjust” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Up/Down to select the channel that you wish to adjust.**

4 **Use cursor Left/Right to adjust the volume.**

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

5 **Use cursor Up/Down/Left/Right to select “Exit”, then press ENTER.**

- Select “Reset” and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to “0.0 dB” (Default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- “Channel Level Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 180)

Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Tone”, then press ENTER.**

The “Tone” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to set the tone control function to on/off.**

On:	Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).
Off (Default)**:**	Playback without tone adjustment.

4 **Select “On” in step 3 and press cursor Down to select the sound range to be adjusted.**

Bass:	Adjust bass.
Treble:	Adjust treble.

5 **Use cursor Left/Right to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.**

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)

- “Tone” settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 176)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 180)

Adjusting audio delay (Audio Delay)

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.

1 Press OPTION.

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 Use cursor Up/Down to select “Audio Delay”, then press ENTER.

The “Audio Delay” screen is displayed.

3 Use cursor Left/Right to set the auto lip sync function to on/off.

On (Default)**:**	Automatically adjusts the audio processing time to compensate for delays in audio/video timing from TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync.
Off:	Do not adjust automatically.

4 Press cursor Down to select “Adjust” if the timing mismatch between the picture and sound need to be corrected manually, then use cursor Left/Right to adjust the timing.

0 ms – 500 ms (Default : 0 ms)

- “Audio Delay” settings are stored for each input source.
- Automatic correction may not be performed depending on the specifications of your TV even when “Auto Lip Sync” is set to “On”.
- You can also finely adjust the delay correction value set by “Auto Lip Sync”.

Changing the strength of Tactile Transducer according to the input source (Tactile Transducer)

Adjusts the volume of the tactile transducer output.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Tactile Transducer”, then press ENTER.**

The “Tactile Transducer” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to set the tactile transducer function to on/off.**

On (Default)**:**	Enable tactile Transducer.
Off:	Disable tactile Transducer.

4 **If you selected “On” in step 3, press cursor Down and adjust the “Level”.**

5 **Use cursor Left/Right to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.**

-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

- “Tactile Transducer” settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the “Speakers” - “Manual Setup” - “Tactile Transducer Setup” - “Tactile Transducer” is set to “Disabled”.

Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

❑ Supported input sources: CD* / Tuner / HEOS Music / Phono

* This cannot be set when HDMI connector is assigned.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Video Select”, then press ENTER.**

The “Video Select” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to select the Video Select mode.**

Off (Default)**:**	Disable Video Select mode.
On:	Enable Video Select mode.

4 **If you selected “On” in step 3, press cursor Down and select “Source”.**

5 **Use cursor Left/Right to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press ENTER.**

- “Video Select” settings are stored for each input source.

Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 (another room).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same background music in the entire house.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.**

The “All Zone Stereo” screen is displayed.

3 **Select “Start”, then press ENTER.**

The input source for ZONE2 is switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.

■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

1 **During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Select “Stop”, then press ENTER.**

- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the “Multi Ch Stereo” and “Stereo” sound modes can be selected.
- When “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (☞ p. 180)
- Save the All Zone Stereo mode playback status to the Smart Select function to enable simple playback in All Zone Stereo mode with a single touch.

Changing the speaker settings to match the listening environment (Speaker Preset)

Two speaker settings can be saved to suit the environments where you use your speakers.

1 **Press OPTION.**

An option menu screen is displayed.

- When the input source is “HEOS Music”, an option menu for online music is displayed. Select “AVR Options…”, then press ENTER.

2 **Use cursor Up/Down to select “Speaker Preset”, then press ENTER.**

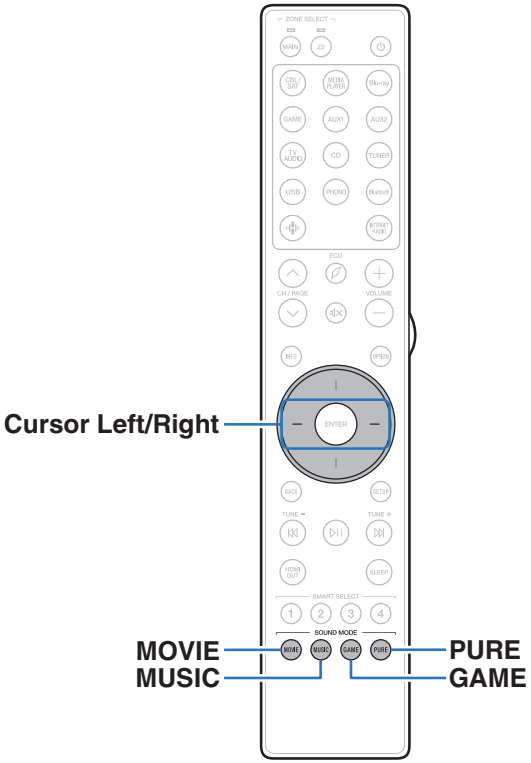
The “Speaker Preset” screen is displayed.

3 **Use cursor Left/Right to set the preset.**

Preset 1 (Default)**:**	Use Preset 1.
Preset 2:	Use Preset 2.

- This function can be used in the following cases.
  - Adjust the speaker settings manually after setting “Speaker Preset” to “Speaker Preset 2”.
  - Save the result to “Speaker Preset 2” after performing Audyssey® Setup for a second time.

Selecting a sound mode



This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes.
Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.
This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.

- For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.

Selecting a sound mode

1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

MOVIE :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
MUSIC :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.
GAME :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.

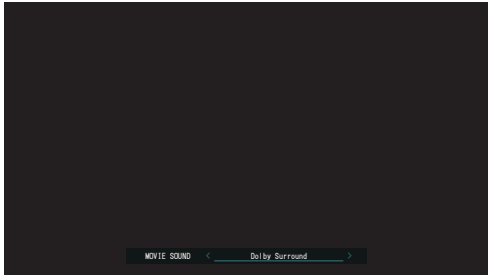
- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.
- You can also press SOUND MODE on the main unit to switch the sound mode.

■ Switching the sound mode

- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use cursor Left/Right to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.

- Please set the surround mode to Dolby Atmos/Surround when playing back Dolby Atmos encoded content. Dolby Atmos/Surround delivers the optimum playback experience from Blu-ray and streaming sources encoded with Dolby Atmos as well as channel based content. The default setting of this receiver is Dolby Atmos/Surround.

【Example】 When MOVIE is pressed



Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

1 **Press PURE to select “Direct”.**

Direct playback begins.

- While DSD signals are played back, “DSD Direct” is displayed.
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.

This mode turns off the main unit display. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

1 **Press PURE to select “Pure Direct”.**

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.

- In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Dialog Enhancer (☞ p. 119)
  - Tone (☞ p. 121)
  - M-DAX (☞ p. 173)
  - MultEQ® XT32 (☞ p. 175)
  - Dynamic EQ (☞ p. 176)
  - Dynamic Volume (☞ p. 177)
  - Graphic EQ (☞ p. 178)
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

NOTE

- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.

Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.

Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

1 **Press PURE to select “Auto”.**

Auto surround playback begins.

- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

Description of sound mode types

Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Atmos	Please select this mode to play content encoded with Dolby Atmos. If you have selected a different sound mode previously, please select again this mode for Dolby Atmos content play back. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and/or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field. An immersive audio experience can be enjoyed from traditional speaker layouts that do not employ overhead or Dolby Atmos Enabled Speakers by selecting the Speaker Virtualizer feature.
Dolby TrueHD	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby TrueHD at 192kHz/96kHz.
Dolby Digital Plus	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Digital	Please select this mode to play back the contents encoded with Dolby Digital.
Dolby Surround	This mode uses Dolby Surround Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use ceiling speakers such as top middle speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

DTS sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
IMAX DTS	This mode is automatically activated when playing back IMAX Enhanced content featuring a DTS bitstream. (☞ p. 167) • When “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” is set to “2 spkrs”, “Speaker Configuration” - “Center” is set to “Large” or “Small”, and sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS”, surround audio is output from the surround back speaker. Audio is not output from the surround speaker. • The bass information of speakers are not redirected to the subwoofer, but getting a better bass effect from front and center speakers by special algorithm of IMAX when the “Front” and “Center” are set to “Small”.
IMAX DTS:X	This mode is automatically activated when playing back IMAX Enhanced content featuring a DTS:X bitstream. (☞ p. 167) • The bass information of speakers are not redirected to the subwoofer, but getting a better bass effect from front and center speakers by special algorithm of IMAX when the “Front” and “Center” are set to “Small”.

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Virtual:X*1*2	This mode uses DTS Virtual:X with virtual height and virtual surround processing to realize a three-dimensional sound field when the height speakers are not used.

*1 It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.

*2 This can be selected when Height, Ceiling and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are not being used.

Auro-3D sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auro-3D	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create three-dimensional audio output using the Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D with a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to create highly realistic three-dimensional audio output.
Auro-2D Surround	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create Surround Sound without a Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D without a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to output Surround Sound.

MPEG-H sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
MPEG-H	This mode can be selected when MPEG-H audio is being delivered, such as in TV broadcasts. With MPEG-H, you can enjoy playback of highly realistic sound according to the format it is delivered in, such as music programs with high-quality sound and movies with multi-channel audio.

PCM multi-channel sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM/DSD sources.

Original sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.

Auto sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

Stereo sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing. • Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected. • When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.

Direct sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.
Pure Direct	This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the “Direct” mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality. • Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.)

Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu “Surround Parameter” to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (☞ p. 165)

- Only “Stereo” can be selected when headphones are used.

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel ∗1	Stereo	○	○	○
	Dolby Surround ∗2	○	○	○
	DTS Neural:X ∗2	○	○	○
	DTS Virtual:X ∗3∗4	○	○	○
	Auro-3D ∗5	○	○	○
	Auro-2D Surround ∗2	○	○	○
	Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○

∗1 2-channel also includes analog input.
∗2 It cannot be selected when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.
∗3 It cannot be selected when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.
∗4 It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos.
∗5 It cannot be selected when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.

Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel ∗6		Stereo	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital + Neural:X	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround ∗7	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital Plus + Neural:X	○	○	○
		Dolby Atmos ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○
		Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround ∗7	○	○	○
		Dolby TrueHD + Neural:X	○	○	○
		Dolby Atmos ∗8	○	○	○
	Dolby Atmos	Dolby Atmos	○	○	○

∗6 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.
∗7 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.
∗8 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.

Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel ∗6	DTS	DTS Surround	○	○	○
		DTS + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		DTS + Neural:X	○	○	○
		DTS + Virtual:X ∗3	○	○	○
	DTS-HD	DTS-HD	○	○	○
		DTS-HD + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		DTS-HD + Neural:X	○	○	○
		DTS-HD + Virtual:X ∗3	○	○	○
	DTS:X	DTS:X	○	○	○
		DTS:X + Virtual:X ∗3	○	○	○
	IMAX DTS	IMAX DTS ∗9	○	○	○
		IMAX DTS + Neural:X ∗9	○	○	○
		IMAX DTS + Virtual:X ∗3∗9	○	○	○
	IMAX DTS:X	IMAX DTS:X ∗9	○	○	○
		IMAX DTS:X + Virtual:X ∗3∗9	○	○	○

∗3 It cannot be selected when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.
∗6 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.
∗9 Selectable when “Surround Parameter” - “IMAX” is set to “Auto” in the menu. When “IMAX” is set to “Off”, playback is normal DTS or DTS:X. (☞ p. 167)

Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
PCM multi-channel		Multi Ch In	○	○	○
		Multi Ch In 7.1	○	○	○
		Multi In + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		Multi Ch In + Neural:X	○	○	○
		Multi In + Virtual:X ∗3	○	○	○
MPEG-H		MPEG-H	○	○	○
Multi-channel ∗6		Auro-3D ∗5 ∗10	○	○	○
		Auro-2D Surround ∗3 ∗10	○	○	○
		Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○

∗3 It cannot be selected when a speaker configuration with any height speakers is used.
∗5 It cannot be selected when a speaker configuration without front height or front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers is used.
∗6 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels.
∗10 It cannot be selected when the input signal is Dolby Atmos, DTS:X and MPEG-H.

■ Views on the display

❶ **Shows a decoder to be used.**
- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, "DD+" is displayed.

❷ **Shows a decoder that creates sound output.**
- "+DSurr" indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.

HDMI Control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

Setting procedure

1 Enable the HDMI Control function of this unit.

Set “HDMI Control” to “On”. (☞ p. 182)

2 Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.

3 Set the HDMI Control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.

- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

4 Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.

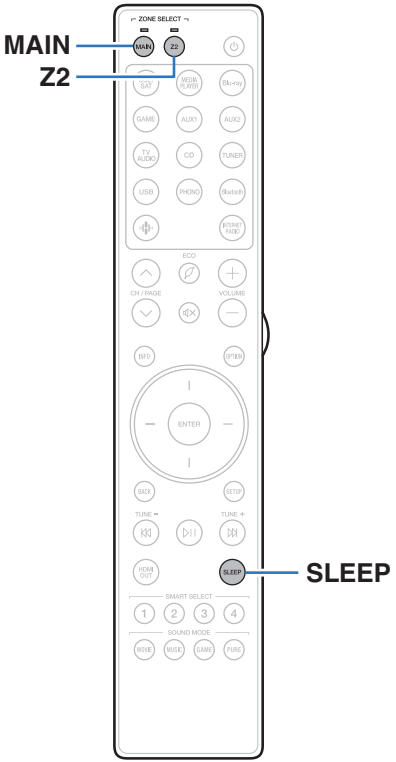
5 Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.

6 When you turn the TV’s power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.

NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner’s manual of each device for details beforehand.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI Control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with “HDMI Control” in the menu set to “On”, the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.

Sleep timer function



You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep. The sleep timer function can be set for each zone.

Using the sleep timer

1 **Press MAIN or Z2 to select the operating zone with the remote control.**

The indicator for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**

- The sleep timer indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
- You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.

The remaining time appears on the display.

■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select “Off”.

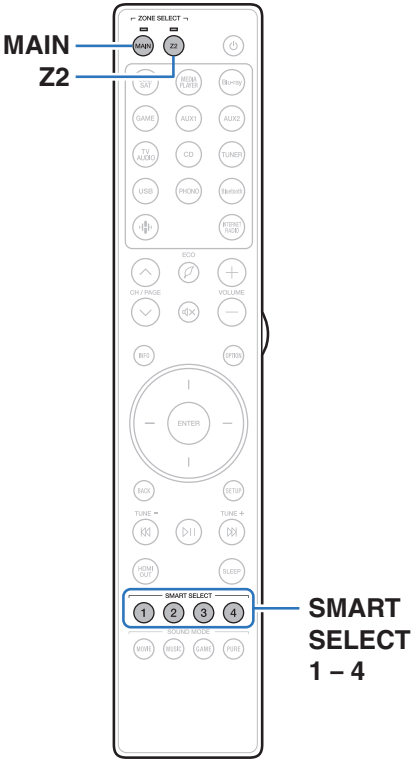
The sleep timer indicator on the display turns off.

- The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

NOTE

- The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

Smart select function



Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the SMART SELECT 1 - 4 buttons.

You can simply press one of the registered SMART SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch.

By saving frequently used settings at the SMART SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment.

The Smart Select function can be memorized for each zone.

Calling up the settings

1 Press MAIN or Z2 to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The indicator for the selected zone is lit.

2 Press SMART SELECT.

The Smart Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source are as shown below.

【MAIN ZONE】/【ZONE2】

Button	Input source
SMART SELECT 1	CBL/SAT
SMART SELECT 2	Blu-ray
SMART SELECT 3	Media Player
SMART SELECT 4	HEOS Music

- Volume is not registered to Smart Select in the factory default settings. See “Changing the settings” to register volume to Smart Select. (☞ p. 146)

Changing the settings

1 Set the items below to the settings you want to register.

The following settings from ① to ⑪ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2.

① Input source (☞ p. 77)
② Volume (☞ p. 78)
③ Sound mode (☞ p. 127)
④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™) (☞ p. 175)
⑤ “M-DAX” (☞ p. 173)
⑥ “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 120)
⑦ “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 124)
⑧ “All Zone Stereo” (☞ p. 125)
⑨ “Speaker Preset” (☞ p. 126)
⑩ “HDMI Video Output” (☞ p. 184)
⑪ “TV Audio sharing settings” (☞ p. 147)

- Press and hold SMART SELECT while a radio station is being received is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station is memorized.
  - Tuner / Internet Radio Station / Spotify

2 Press MAIN or Z2 to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The indicator for the selected zone is lit.

3 Press and hold the desired SMART SELECT until “Smart∗ Memory” or “Z2 Smart∗ Memory” appear on the display.

The current settings will be memorized.
∗ is displayed the number for the SMART SELECT button you pressed.

■ Changing the Smart Select Name

The MAIN ZONE Smart Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.
For the name change method, see “Smart Select Names” (☞ p. 246).

TV Audio sharing settings

You can enjoy the same content as the MAIN ZONE in ZONE2 while maintaining surround playback of the content from TV or other playback devices in the MAIN ZONE with the original audio format such as Dolby Atmos.
By saving the following settings in advance to Smart Select, you can easily call up the playback environments to be used in the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 with this function.

1 **Select the input source to play back in the MAIN ZONE.**

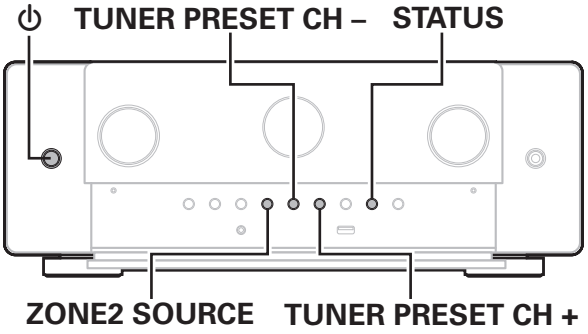
2 **Press ZONE2 ON/OFF on the main unit to turn on the power of ZONE2.**

3 **Press ZONE2 SOURCE on the main unit to switch the input source of ZONE2 to “Source”.**
If “Source” is selected as the input source of ZONE2, the input source is changed to mirror that of the MAIN ZONE.

4 **Press and hold the desired SMART SELECT until “Smart Select* Memory” appears on the display.**

Panel lock function

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.



Disabling all key button operations

1. **Press ⏻ while you press and hold TUNER PRESET CH + and ZONE2 SOURCE with the unit in standby mode.**
2. **Use TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – to select “P/V LOCK ON”.**
3. **Press STATUS to enter the setting.**
   All button operations except ⏻ are disabled.

Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

1. **Press ⏻ while you press and hold TUNER PRESET CH + and ZONE2 SOURCE with the unit in standby mode.**
2. **Use TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – to select “FP LOCK ON”.**
3. **Press STATUS to enter the setting.**
   All button operations except ⏻ and VOLUME are disabled.

Canceling the Panel lock function

1 **Press ⏻ while you press and hold TUNER PRESET CH + and ZONE2 SOURCE with the unit in standby mode.**

2 **Press TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – to select “FP LOCK ∗OFF”.**

(∗ The currently set mode.)

3 **Press STATUS to enter the setting.**

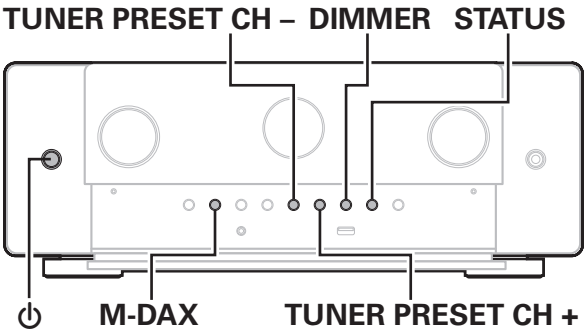
The Panel lock function is canceled.

- Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

Remote lock function

When connecting an IR receiver, enable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

By default, this function is disabled.



Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

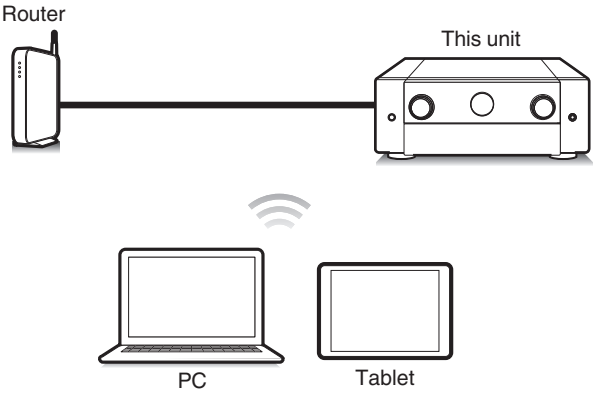
1. **Press ⏻ while you press and hold M-DAX and DIMMER with the unit in standby mode.**
2. **Use TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – to select “RC LOCK ON”.**
3. **Press STATUS to enter the setting.**
   The infrared light receiving function is disabled.

Enabling the remote sensor function

1. **Press ⏻ while you press and hold M-DAX and DIMMER with the unit in standby mode.**
2. **Press TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – to select “RC LOCK ∗OFF”.**
   (∗ The currently set mode.)
3. **Press STATUS to enter the setting.**
   Infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

Web control function

You can control and configure this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.



- This unit and the PC or tablet need to be connected correctly to the network in order to use the web control function. (☞ p. 69)
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

Controlling the unit from a web control

The web control screen supports the following functions.

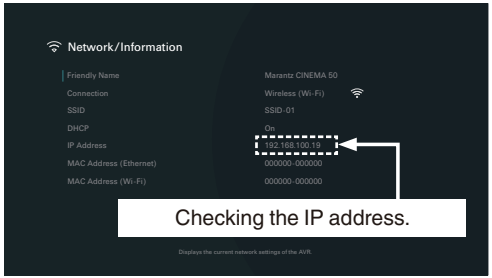
1. **Setup Menu**
2. **Power ON/OFF for each zone**
3. **MAIN ZONE input source switching**

Web control screen
Top menu

- Audyssey Setup is not supported on the web control screen. If you wish to perform measurement, perform measurement from the on-screen Setup Menu.

1 **Switch the “Network Control” setting to “Always On”. (☞ p. 234)**

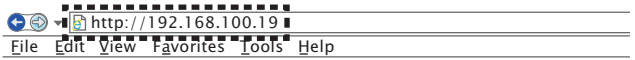
2 **Check the IP address of this unit with “Information”. (☞ p. 230)**



3 **Open a web browser on a PC or tablet.**

4 **Enter the IP address of this unit in browser’s address box.**

For example, if the IP address of this unit is “192.168.100.19”, enter “http://192.168.100.19”.

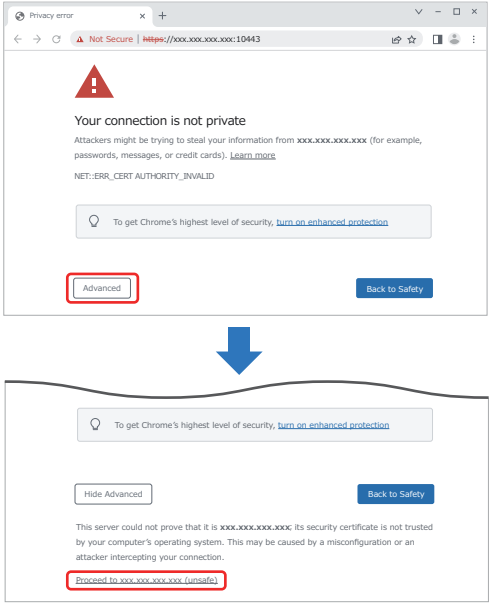


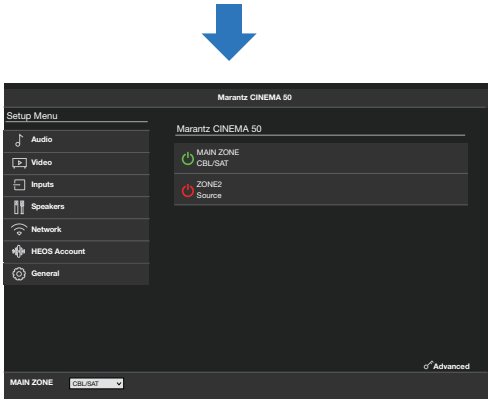
5 **A privacy error message is displayed when the web control screen is opened through a web browser. Follow the following procedure to proceed to the web control screen.**

The message and behavior differ depending on your web browser.

6 When the top menu is displayed on the web browser, click on the menu item you want to operate.

Example (Chrome):
Click “Advanced” and “Proceed to xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (IP address)” to open the web control screen.





Playback in ZONE2 (Another room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy video and audio in a room (ZONE2) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE).

You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.

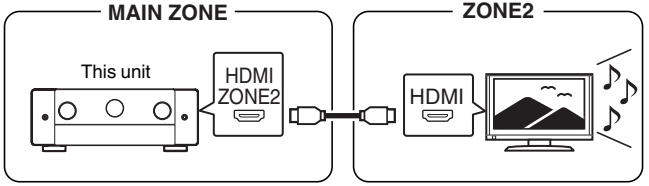
Connecting ZONE2

You can use the following three methods to play back video and audio in ZONE2.

- “Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector” (☞ p. 154)
- “Connecting using a speaker output terminal” (☞ p. 155)
- “Connecting using an external amplifier” (☞ p. 155)

■ Connection 1 : Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector

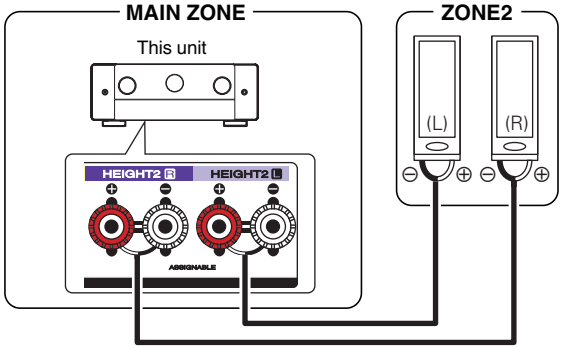
When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 4 IN connector in ZONE2 (HDMI ZONE2 function).



- When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, and the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source, the MAIN ZONE audio may be mixed down to 2-channel audio.
- The menu screen is not output in ZONE2.

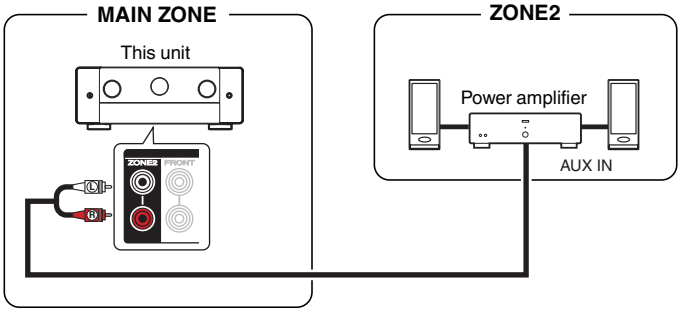
■ Connection 2: Connecting using a speaker output terminal

When “Assign Mode” is set to “ZONE2” in the menu, ZONE2 audio is output from the HEIGHT2 speaker terminal. (☞ p. 205)



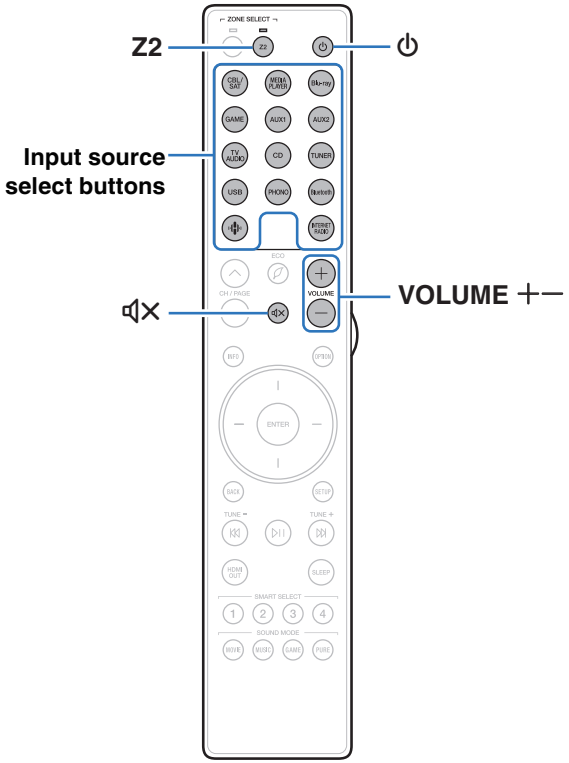
■ Connection 3 : Connection using an external amplifier (ZONE2)

The audio signals of this unit’s ZONE2 audio output connectors are output to the ZONE2 amplifiers and played on these amplifiers.



- If the input for ZONE2 is set to “Source”, all types of input signals can be listened to from ZONE2. (☞ p. 156)
- If the input for ZONE2 is set to a specific source (like CBL/SAT), only analog signal or 2-channel PCM signal input (from HDMI connectors or digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL)) can be listened to from ZONE2. To playback HDMI signal other than 2-channel PCM in ZONE2, set “HDMI Audio” to “PCM”. (☞ p. 245)
  2-channel PCM signals are output from a device connected to the input source selected for ZONE2 and can be played back in ZONE2.
  In this case, the MAIN ZONE audio will also be converted to 2-channel PCM signals if the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source. However, depending on the playback device, the playback signal may not be converted to PCM even if this setting is configured.

Playback in ZONE2



1 **Press Z2 to set the operating zone to ZONE2 with the remote control.**

The indicator for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on the ZONE2 power.**

The ZONE2 power indicator on the display lights.

- Power in ZONE2 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF on the main unit.

3 **Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played.**

The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2.

- To perform an operation with the main unit, press ZONE2 SOURCE. Each time you press ZONE2 SOURCE, the input source changes.

- Setting the input source of ZONE2 as the “Source” allows you to play the same content in MAIN ZONE and in ZONE2, regardless of the type of input signal.
  - Set the input source of ZONE2 as the “Source” by pressing the ZONE2 SOURCE button on the main unit.
  - If the MAIN ZONE input source is changed while ZONE2 is selected as the “Source”, then ZONE2’s input source will be changed to mirror the MAIN ZONE’s input source.

■ Adjusting the volume (ZONE2)

Use VOLUME +− to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” is set to “70 (–10 dB)”. (☞ p. 245)

- Turn VOLUME after pressing ZONE2 SOURCE on the main unit to adjust the volume.

■ Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2)

Press MUTE 🔇.

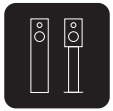
The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu. (☞ p. 246)

- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE 🔇 again.

Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.
The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

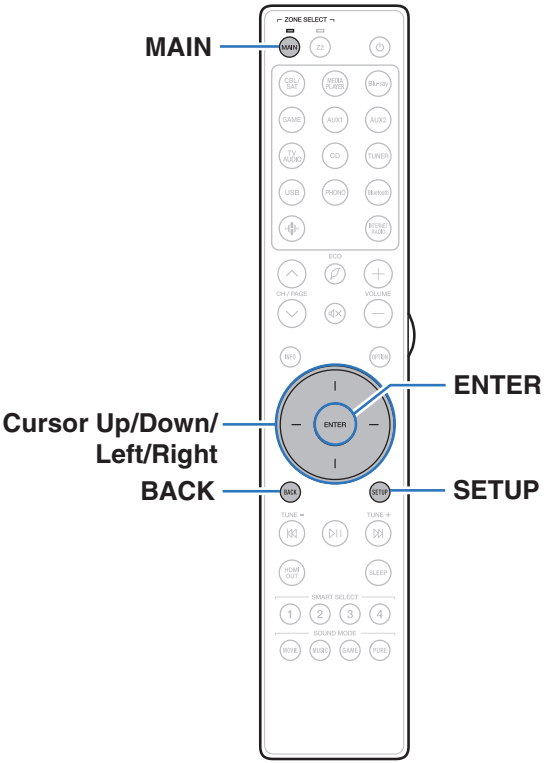
Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Audio	**Subwoofer Level Adjust**	Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.	164
	Bass Sync	Synchronizes the timing of the low frequency sound.	164
	Surround Parameter	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	165
	M-DAX	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	173
	Volume	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	174
	Audyssey	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ settings.	175
	Graphic EQ	Adjusts the tonal quality for each speaker using a graphic equalizer.	178
Video	**HDMI Setup**	Makes settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.	180
	Output Settings	Makes settings for video output.	184
	On-Screen Display	Selects the on-screen display user interface preferences.	186
	Screensaver	Sets the screen saver setting.	187
	4K/8K Signal Format	Sets signal format options for your 4K or 8K video equipment.	187
	HDCP Setup	Sets the HDCP version for each HDMI input source.	189
	TV Format	Selects the format used to send video to the TV.	189

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Inputs	**Input Assign**	Changes input connector assignment and the audio input mode.	190
	Source Rename	Changes the display name for input source.	193
	Hide Sources	Selects source inputs to hide on the user interface and front panel displays.	193
	Source Level	Adjusts the input level for the current source.	193
 Speakers	**Audyssey® Setup**	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	194
	Manual Setup	Sets up the speakers manually or changes Audyssey® Setup settings.	205
Network	**Information**	Displays network information.	230
	Connection	Configures the network connection.	230
	Settings	Configures the network settings (DHCP and IP address).	233
	Network Control	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	234
	Friendly Name	Edits the name of this unit that is displayed on the network.	235
	Diagnostics	Tests the network connection.	235
	AirPlay	Settings for Apple AirPlay.	236
	Spotify Connect	Toggles access to Spotify Connect.	237
	Wi-Fi and Bluetooth	Toggles power to the Wi-Fi and Bluetooth radios.	237

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
HEOS Account	**[When the user is signed out of the HEOS account]**		
	I have a HEOS Account	Select to sign in.	238
	Create Account	Creates new HEOS account.	238
	Forgot Password	If you forgot your password, we'll send you an email with instructions to reset it.	238
	[When the user is signed in to the HEOS account]		
	Signed in as	Displays your HEOS account.	238
	Change Location	Selects your location.	238
	Change Password	Changes your HEOS account password.	238
	Delete Account	Deletes your HEOS account.	238
	Sign Out	Signs out of your HEOS account.	238

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
General	**Language**	Selects the language for the on-screen user interface.	239
	Owner's Manual	Access the online Owner's Manual from your mobile device.	239
	ECO	Configures the ECO Mode and Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	239
	Bluetooth Transmitter	Sets Bluetooth transmitter settings.	243
	ZONE2 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2.	244
	Zone Rename	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	246
	Smart Select Names	Changes the Smart Select Name display title to one you prefer.	246
	Trigger Out	Select the conditions for activating trigger out function.	247
	Front Display	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	247
	Firmware	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	248
	Information	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	250
	Usage Data	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Marantz.	252
	Save & Load	Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.	252
	Setup Lock	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	253
	Reset	Various settings are reset to the factory default values.	253

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Setup Assistant	**Begin Setup...**	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 9 of the separate manual “Quick Start Guide”
	Language Select	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	Speaker Setup		
	Speaker Calibration		
	Network Setup		
	TV Audio Setup		
	Input Setup		
	Mobile Apps		



Menu operations

1 **Press MAIN on the remote control unit to set the operating zone to the MAIN ZONE.**

The MAIN button lights.

2 **Press SETUP.**

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use cursor Up/Down/Right to select the menu to be set or operated, then press ENTER.**

4 **Use cursor Left/Right to change to desired setting.**

5 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press BACK.
- Exiting the menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

Audio

Make audio-related settings.

Subwoofer Level Adjust

Adjusts the subwoofer channel volume for all input sources.

■ Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 / Subwoofer 3 / Subwoofer 4

Adjusts the volume level for the Subwoofer 1, 2, 3 and 4.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

- This setting is also reflected in the subwoofer channel level in the “Speakers” - “Levels” menu settings. (☞ p. 225)
- The name of the subwoofer changes depending on the configuration of “Subwoofer Mode” (☞ p. 216) and “Subwoofer Layout” (☞ p. 216).

Bass Sync

For contents recorded in multi-channel such as Blu-ray discs, the recorded low frequency effects (LFE) may be out of synch and delayed. This function corrects such a delay of low frequency effects (LFE).

0 ms – 16 ms (Default : 0 ms)

- How low frequency effects (LFE) are delayed differ according to the disc. Set this to the desired value.
- “Bass Sync” settings are stored for each input source.
- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.

Surround Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.
The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode.

- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- “Surround Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

On:	“Cinema EQ” is used.
Off (Default)**:**	“Cinema EQ” is not used.

- This item cannot be set when sound mode is “Direct”, “Pure Direct”, “Stereo” and “Original sound mode”.

Loudness Management

This sets whether to output as specified in “Dynamic Compression” or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

On (Default)**:**	Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in “Dynamic Compression” and Dialogue normalization function.
Off:	“Dynamic Compression” settings and Dialogue normalization are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.

- “Loudness Management” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and Dolby Atmos signal is input.

Dynamic Compression

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

Auto:	Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.
Low / Medium / High:	These set the compression level.
Off (Default)**:**	Dynamic range compression is always off.

- "Dynamic Compression" can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS signal is input.
- "Auto" cannot be set when inputting a DTS signal.

Dialog Control

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

0 – 6 (Default : 0)

- This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

-10 dB – 0 dB (Default: 0 dB)

- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
- For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.
  - Dolby Digital sources: 0 dB
  - DTS movie sources: 0 dB
  - DTS music sources: -10 dB

Speaker Virtualizer

The Speaker Virtualizer enhances the surround and height speaker channels to create an enveloping virtual surround effect.

On (Default)**:**	Enables “Speaker Virtualizer”.
Off:	Disables “Speaker Virtualizer”.

- You can set this when the sound mode is “Dolby Atmos”, “Dolby Surround” or sound mode that has “+Dolby Surround” in the sound mode name.
- Usable when not using height, ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers, or when not using surround speakers.
- Audio is not output from the surround back speaker if “Speaker Virtualizer” is set to “On” when “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” is set to “1 spkr” in the menu.

DTS Neural:X

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

On (Default)**:**	Use “DTS Neural:X”.
Off:	Do not use “DTS Neural:X”.

- You can set this when sound mode is “DTS:X”.

IMAX

Sets the audio mode for IMAX playback.

Auto (Default)**:**	Automatically enables IMAX mode when IMAX content is detected.
Off:	Disables IMAX mode.

- This setting cannot be set when headphones are used.

IMAX Audio Settings

You can configure special IMAX audio settings to recreate the conditions of an IMAX theater.

Auto (Default)**:**	Applies the optimized speaker settings to reproduce similar to the IMAX theater environment.
Manual:	Manually adjusts the “High Pass Filter”, “Low Pass Filter” and “Subwoofer Output”.

- You can set this when sound mode is “IMAX DTS” or “IMAX DTS:X”.
- “Speakers” - “Crossovers”, “Bass” - “Subwoofer Output” and “LPF for LFE” in the menu cannot be applied during IMAX playback.

High Pass Filter

Set the high pass filter cutoff frequency for all speakers during IMAX playback.

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)

- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.

Low Pass Filter

Set the low pass filter cutoff frequency of the LFE signal during IMAX playback.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 120 Hz)

- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.

Subwoofer Output

Set the bass signal to be played by the subwoofer during IMAX playback.

LFE + Main:	The low range signal of all speakers is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer. The LFE signal and the bass component of each speaker is played.
LFE (Default)**:**	Only the LFE signal is played.

- You can set this when “IMAX Audio Settings” is set to “Manual”.

Auro-Matic 3D Preset

Selects the Auro-Matic 3D Preset for fine tuning the Auro-3D experience to specific audio material.

Small:	“Small” is ideal for pop and chamber music.
Medium (Default)**:**	“Medium” is ideal on jazz music or typical movies and TV shows.
Large:	“Large” is ideal for recordings that were recorded in large spaces (e.g. orchestral recording).
Movie:	“Movie” is ideal for experiencing a large-cinema effect for watching movies (e.g. action movies with big explosions).
Speech:	“Speech” is ideal for recordings which are mostly dialog (e.g. news broadcast), and that have virtually no inherent spatial information.

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

Auro-Matic 3D Strength

Changes the level of the up-mixed channels in relation to the original input signal.
The value ranges from 0 (no up-mixing) to 15 (Maximum level, providing maximum effect).

0 - 15 (Default:12)

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

Auro-3D Mode

Select how to output sound to all speakers when Auro-3D decoding is active.

Channel Expansion (Default)**:**	Incoming Auro-3D content is expanded to additional speakers. All speakers configured for Auro-3D will output sound.
Direct:	Incoming Auro-3D content is sent directly to each corresponding channel. No content is sent to additional speakers.

- You can set this when the input signal contains Auro-3D signal and sound mode is set to Auro-3D.

Delay Time

Adjusts delay time for surround channels.

0 ms – 300 ms (Default: 30 ms)

Effect Level

Adjust the sound effect level of the current sound mode.

1 – 15 (Default: 10)

- Set to a lower level if the positioning and sense of phase of the surround signals seems unnatural.

Room Size

Determine size of acoustic environment.

Small:	Simulate acoustics of a small room.
Medium small:	Simulate acoustics of a medium-small room.
Medium (Default)**:**	Simulate acoustics of a medium room.
Medium large:	Simulate acoustics of a medium-large room.
Large:	Simulate acoustics of a large room.

- This item can be set when sound mode is “Rock Arena”, “Jazz Club”, “Mono Movie” and “Video Game”.
- “Room Size” does not indicate the size of the room in which sources are played.

Speaker Select

Selects which speakers output sound, depending on the current sound mode.

Floor:	Plays back without height speakers.
Floor & Height (Default)**:**	Plays back with height speakers.

- This can be set when the sound mode is the original sound mode.

Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

On (Default)**:**	The subwoofer is used.
Off:	The subwoofer is not used.

- You can set this when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Stereo” and in the menu “Subwoofer Output” is set to “LFE + Main”. (☞ p. 226)

Set Defaults

The “Surround Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.

M-DAX

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The “M-DAX” function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

■ Mode

High:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
Medium:	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
Low:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use “M-DAX”.

- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- “M-DAX” settings are stored for each input source.
- This can also be set by pressing M-DAX on the main unit.

Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

0 - 98 (Default)**:**	Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.
-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB:	Display ---dB (Min), in the range –79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.

- "Scale" settings are reflected in all the zones.

■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 – 80 (–20 dB – 0 dB)
Off (Default)

- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is "-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB". (☞ p. 174)

■ Power On Level

Sets the initial volume level when the power is turned on.

Last (Default)**:**	Sets the power-on level to the last-used volume level.
Mute:	Sets the power-on level to mute level.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB) :	Sets a specific power-on level.

- The dB value is displayed when the "Scale" setting is "-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB". (☞ p. 174)

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when mute is on.

Full (Default)**:**	Sets the mute level to full mute (no sound).
–40 dB :	Sets the mute level to 40 dB lower than the current volume level.
–20 dB :	Sets the mute level to 20 dB lower than the current volume level.

Audyssey®

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see “Explanation of terms” (☞ p. 301).

- “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Reference Level Offset”, “Dynamic Volume”, “Audyssey LFC™” and “Containment Amount” settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the “Direct” or “Pure Direct” mode, “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume” and “Audyssey LFC™” settings cannot be configured.
- When the sound mode is in “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume” and “Audyssey LFC™” settings cannot be configured.
- This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.

■ MultEQ® XT32

MultEQ® XT32 compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the “Reference” setting.

Reference (Default)**:**	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies. Optimal for movies.
L/R Bypass:	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT32 on the front left and right speakers.
Flat:	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
Off:	Do not use “MultEQ® XT32”.

- When using headphones, “MultEQ® XT32” is automatically set to “Off”.

Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

On (Default)**:**	Use “Dynamic EQ”.
Off:	Do not use “Dynamic EQ”.

- When the menu “Dynamic EQ” setting is “On”, it is not possible to do “Tone” adjustment. (☞ p. 121)
- This item cannot be set when “MultEQ® XT32” in the menu is set to “Off”.

Reference Level Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

0 dB (Film Reference) (Default)**:**	Optimized for content such as movies.
5 dB :	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
10 dB :	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
15 dB :	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.

- Setting is enabled when “Dynamic EQ” is “On”. (☞ p. 176)

Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

Heavy:	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
Medium:	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
Light:	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use "Dynamic Volume".

- If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup", the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". (☞ p. 194)
- This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off".

Audyssey LFC™

Adjusts the low frequency band to prevent bass and vibration from being conveyed to neighboring rooms.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

On:	Use "Audyssey LFC™".
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use "Audyssey LFC™".

- This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off".

Containment Amount

Adjusts the amount of low frequency containment. Use higher settings if you have close neighbors.

1 – 7 (Default : 4)

- This can be set when "Audyssey LFC™" in the menu is set to "On".

Graphic EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.

- Speakers for which “Graphic EQ” can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when “MultEQ® XT32” setting is “Off”. (☞ p. 175)
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- If you are using headphones, you can set the equalizer for headphones. (☞ p. 178)

Graphic EQ / Headphone EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

On:	Use the graphic equalizer.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use the graphic equalizer.

- “Headphone EQ” is set in the menu when headphones are used.

Speaker Selection

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

All:	Adjust all speaker tones together.
Left/Right (Default)**:**	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
Each:	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band.

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.
   63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz
3. Adjust the level.
   –20.0 dB – +6.0 dB (Default: 0.0 dB)

- Front Dolby, Surround Dolby and Back Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.

Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in Audyssey® Setup.

- “Curve Copy” is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.
- “Curve Copy” cannot be used when using headphones.

Set Defaults

The “Graphic EQ” settings are returned to the default settings.

Video

Make video-related settings.

HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI Audio Out, HDMI Pass Through and HDMI Control settings.

NOTE

- When “HDMI Pass Through” and “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, it consumes more standby power. (“HDMI Pass Through” (☞ p. 180), “HDMI Control” (☞ p. 182)) If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

■ HDMI Audio Out

Selects the audio output speakers.

AVR (Default)**:**	Play back through speakers connected to the unit.
TV:	Play back through TV connected to the unit.

- When the HDMI Control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. (☞ p. 141)
- When the power of this unit is on and “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.

■ HDMI Pass Through

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

On (Default)**:**	Transmits the selected HDMI input through this unit’s HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.
Off:	No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit’s HDMI output in standby power mode.

Pass Through Source

Selects the HDMI input to pass through the HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.

Last:	Selects the last used HDMI input.
CBL/SAT / Media Player / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX1 / AUX2 / TV Audio / CD* (Default : CBL/SAT)**:**	Selects the HDMI input as the standby source.

*"Pass Through Source" can be set when any of the HDMI connectors is assigned to "CD" for the input source in the "Input Assign" setting. (☞ p. 190)

- "Pass Through Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On". ("HDMI Pass Through" (☞ p. 180), "HDMI Control" (☞ p. 182))

RC Source Select

Set whether to allow this unit to be turned on by the input source select button on the remote control when this unit is in standby power mode.

Power On + Source (Default)**:**	The power of this unit is turned on and the input source changes.
Source Select Only:	This unit remains in standby but switches the HDMI input source when you press an input source button. The power display of this unit blinks when the input source select button of the remote control is pressed.

- "RC Source Select" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On". ("HDMI Pass Through" (☞ p. 180), "HDMI Control" (☞ p. 182))

HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

On:	Use HDMI Control function.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use HDMI Control function.

- If using the HDMI Control function, connect a TV compatible with HDMI control to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.
- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, the power to this unit can be linked to the TV power and the volume of this unit can be controlled using the TV remote control.
- Refer to “HDMI Control function” for more information about the HDMI Control function. (☞ p. 141)

NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

ARC

On the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, set whether to receive sound from the TV via HDMI.

On:	Use ARC function.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use ARC function.

- If using this function, use a TV compatible with ARC (Audio Return Channel) and enable the HDMI Control function of the TV.
- When “ARC” is set to “On”, the volume of this unit can be controlled using the TV remote control even when “HDMI Control” is set to “Off” on this unit.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, the “ARC” settings automatically switch “On”. (☞ p. 182)

NOTE

- If the “ARC” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- Using an eARC function-compatible television enables audio playback from the speaker connected to this unit, regardless of “ARC” settings in the menu.

TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the “TV Audio” input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to this unit.

On (Default)**:**	Select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.
Off:	Do not select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.

- “TV Audio Switching” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 182)

Power Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

All (Default)**:**	If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
Video:	With an input source being selected that is assigned “HDMI”, when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (☞ p. 191)
Off:	This unit does not link with power to a TV.

- “Power Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 182)

■ Power Saving

Enables the Power Saving feature of the AVR to reduce energy costs when using the TV's speakers.

This function is activated in the following cases.

- When “TV Audio” is selected as the input source of this unit
- When playing content from a device connected by HDMI

On:	Use Power Saving feature.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use Power Saving feature.

- “Power Saving” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 182)

Output Settings

Makes settings for video output.

■ HDMI Video Output

Select the HDMI monitor connector to be used.

Auto(Dual) (Default)**:**	The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used.
Monitor 1:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used.
Monitor 2:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used.

- If both the HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors are connected and “HDMI Upscaler” is set to “Auto”, the signals are output with a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. (☞ p. 185)
- You can check which resolutions are compatible with your TV in “HDMI Monitor 1” and “HDMI Monitor 2”. (☞ p. 250)
- When connecting multiple Dolby Vision TVs, the signal will only be optimal for one TV. A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector has priority.

Video Mode

Configure the video processing method to match the type of video content.

Auto (Default)**:**	Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.
Game:	Always process video for game content. Minimize the video delay when the video is delayed compared to the button operations on the controller of the game console.
Movie:	Perform image processing that is suitable for contents other than games.
Bypass:	Remove all video processing from the HDMI video path.

- If “Video Mode” is set to “Auto”, the mode is switched according to the input contents.
- Information displays such as the volume bar cannot be overlaid with the video signal when “Video Mode” is set to “Bypass”.
- This item can be set when “HDMI” is assigned for each input source.
- This cannot be set when sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS” or “IMAX DTS:X”.

HDMI Upscaler

Sets the mode for upscaling 1080p and 4K HDMI content to 8K.

Auto:	Upscale 1080p and 4K HDMI video to 8K based on the monitor’s capabilities.
Off (Default)**:**	8K upscaler is disabled.

- This item can be set when “HDMI” is assigned for each input source.
- This function is not effective when the input signal is “x.v.Color”, 3D, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color, computer resolutions, compressed video or HDR.
- This cannot be set when sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS” or “IMAX DTS:X”.
- This item can be set when “Video Mode” is set to anything other than “Bypass”. (☞ p. 185)

On-Screen Display

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

Bottom (Default)**:**	Display at the bottom.
Top:	Display at the top.
Off:	Turn display off.

- When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to “Top”.

■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the input source is switched.

On (Default)**:**	Turn display on.
Off:	Turn display off.

■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is “HEOS Music” or “Tuner”.

Always On (Default)**:**	Show display continuously.
Auto Off:	Show display for 30 seconds after operation.

Screensaver

Select the screen saver setting.

A screen saver is activated if no operation is performed for more than 5 minutes when no video signal is input or when the same screen (e.g. the setup menu) is displayed.

Use cursor Up/Down/Left/Right to clear the screen saver.

On:	Turns screen saver on.
Off (Default)**:**	Turns screen saver off.

- The screen saver is activated in the following cases.
  - When the setup menu is displayed
  - When no video signal is input
  - When the HEOS Music, USB, Bluetooth or Tuner playback screen is displayed

4K/8K Signal Format

Set the format of 4K and 8K signal to be played back by this unit when the TV or playback device connected to this unit is HDMI 4K or 8K signal compatible.

■ 4K/8K Signal Format

Sets the signal format options for devices connected to each input on this unit.

Standard:	Select if your TV and the source device support 4K 60Hz 4:2:0 8 bit video signals.
Enhanced (Default)**:**	Select if your TV, the source device, and cables support high quality 4K 60Hz 4:4:4 8 bit, 4:2:2 or 4:2:0 10 bit video signals.
8K Enhanced:	Select if your TV, the source device, and cables support high quality 8K 60Hz or 4K 120Hz video signals.

【Relation between the “4K/8K Signal Format” setting and supported resolutions】

Support Resolution	Color Space	Pixel Depth	4K/8K Signal Format		
			Standard	Enhanced	8K Enhanced
4K 24Hz, 4K 30Hz, 4K 25Hz	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	✓	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	✓	✓
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	✓	✓	✓
4K 60Hz, 4K 50Hz	YCbCr 4:2:0	8 bit	✓	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	✓	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8 bit	–	✓	✓
		10,12 bit	–	–	✓
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	–	✓	✓
4K 120Hz, 4K 100Hz	YCbCr 4:2:0	8,10,12 bit	–	–	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8,10 bit	–	–	✓
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	–	–	✓
8K 24Hz, 8K 30Hz, 8K 25Hz	YCbCr 4:2:0	8,10,12 bit	–	–	✓
	RGB / YCbCr 4:4:4	8,10 bit	–	–	✓
	YCbCr 4:2:2	12 bit	–	–	✓
8K 60Hz, 8K 50Hz	YCbCr 4:2:0	8, 10 bit	–	–	✓

- When setting this to “Enhanced”, we recommend using a “Premium High Speed HDMI Cable” or “Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet” that has an “HDMI Premium Certified Cable” label attached to the product package.
- When setting this to “8K Enhanced”, we recommend using a certified “Ultra High Speed HDMI cable”.
- When this setting is “8K Enhanced”, configure the television or playback device settings to match this setting.
- When this setting is “8K Enhanced”, video may not be output correctly depending on the connected playback device or HDMI cable. In this case, change this setting to “Enhanced” or “Standard”.
- “Custom” is displayed for the setting item if our service engineers or custom installers has configured the HDMI signal format for this unit.
- “4K/8K Signal Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the setting.

1. Switch to the HDMI input source you want to set.
2. Press and hold the main unit’s ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
   “Video Format < NTSC>” appears on the display.
3. Press the main unit's DIMMER.
   “4K/8K Format <Enh>” appears on the display.
4. Use the main unit's TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – and select the 4K/8K Signal Format.
5. Press the main unit’s STATUS to complete the setting.

HDCP Setup

Sets the HDCP version for each HDMI input source.

Video may not be output depending on the HDCP version of your player and the TV.

If this issue occurs, use this setting to set one version of HDCP. This may be able to output video.

Auto (Default)**:**	Automatically applies the HDCP version of this unit according to TV.
1.4:	Fixes the HDCP version of this unit to 1.4.
2.3:	Fixes the HDCP version of this unit to 2.3.

- "Custom" is displayed for the setting item if our service engineers or custom installers has configured the HDCP version for this unit.

TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

■ Format

NTSC (Default)**:**	Select NTSC output.
PAL:	Select PAL output.

- "Format" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.
  1. Press and hold the main unit's ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
     "Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
  2. Use the main unit's TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – and set the video signal format.
  3. Press the main unit's STATUS to complete the setting.

NOTE

- When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.

Inputs

Perform settings related to input source playback.

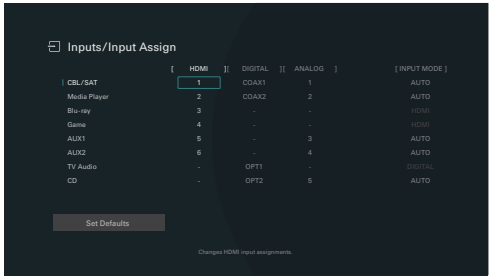
You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector and analog audio input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.

Sets the audio input mode for each “INPUT MODE” source. “AUTO” is normally recommended for this setting. This automatically detects and plays signal input to this unit prioritized in the following order: HDMI > DIGITAL > ANALOG.



- By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector			INPUT MODE
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	AUTO
Media Player	2	COAX2	2	AUTO
Blu-ray	3	–	–	HDMI
Game	4	–	–	HDMI
AUX1	5	–	3	AUTO
AUX2	6	–	4	AUTO
TV Audio	–	OPT1	–	DIGITAL
CD	–	OPT2	5	AUTO

❑ TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to “HDMI” combined with the audio signal assigned at “Input Assign” - “DIGITAL”, you will also need to select “DIGITAL” in the “INPUT MODE”.

- The same input connector can be assigned to multiple input sources. For example, assign the same HDMI input connector to multiple sources to use each input source in combination with analog or digital audio as you prefer. In such cases, set the audio connector for playback in “INPUT MODE”.

■ HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6:	Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

- When “HDMI Control” or “ARC” is set to “On” in the menu, “HDMI” cannot be assigned to “TV Audio”. (“HDMI Control” (☞ p. 182), “ARC” (☞ p. 182))
- The eARC function does not operate when “HDMI” is set as the “TV Audio” input source.

■ DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

COAX1 (Coaxial) **/ COAX2 / OPT1** (Optical) **/ OPT2:**	Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

■ ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5:	Assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

INPUT MODE

Set the audio input modes for each input source.
It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to “AUTO”.

AUTO (Default)**:**	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
HDMI:	Play only signals from HDMI input.
DIGITAL:	Play only signals from digital audio input.
ANALOG:	Play only signals from analog audio input.

- If “HDMI Control” is set to “On” and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR 1 connectors, the input mode whose input source is “TV Audio” is fixed to ARC.
- When an eARC function-compatible television is connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, the input mode whose input source is “TV Audio” is fixed to eARC.

Set Defaults

The “Input Assign” settings are returned to the default settings.

Source Rename

- Changes the display name of the input source.
  Once changed, the name is displayed on the display and menu screens of this unit.
- If the device name can be acquired from a connected HDMI device, the display name is changed automatically.
  Use this function to change names as needed when the device you are using differs from the input source on this unit.

CBL/SAT / Media Player / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 / AUX2 / TV Audio / CD / Phono:	Change the display name for input source.
Set Defaults:	The “Source Rename” settings are returned to the default settings.

- Up to 16 characters can be input.

Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

Show (Default)**:**	Use this source.
Hide:	Do not use this source.

Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source’s audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

- “Source Level” settings are stored for each input source.

Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called “Audyssey® Setup”.

You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed “Speaker Calibration” in “Setup Assistant”.

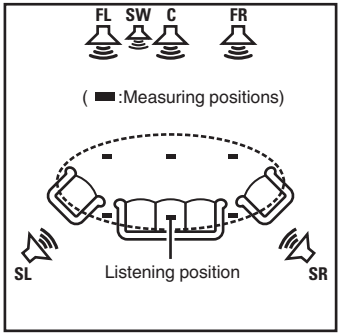
To set up the speakers manually, use “Manual Setup” on the menu. (☞ p. 205)

Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 2 ft (60 cm) of the first measurement position (main listening position).

- If you perform Audyssey® Setup, Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ functions are enabled. (☞ p. 175)



FL Front speaker (L)
FR Front speaker (R)
C Center speaker
SW Subwoofer
SL Surround speaker (L)
SR Surround speaker (R)

About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

About Audyssey Sub EQ HT™

The Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ performs corrections based on the volume level and the distances of multiple subwoofers, and processes the Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 signal to reproduce a powerful low frequency sound.

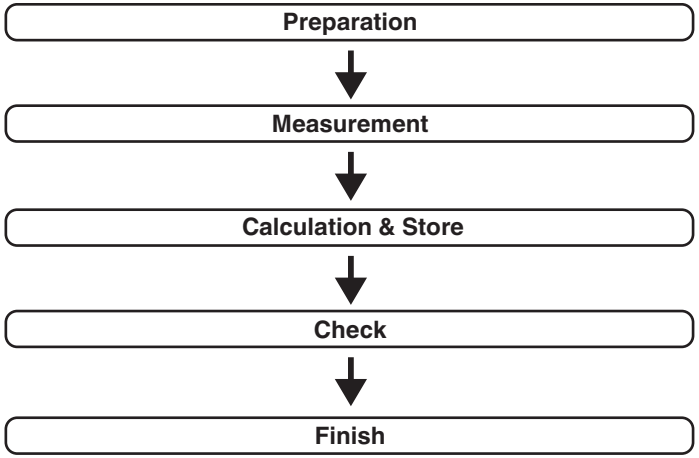
To run Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ you must set “Measure (2 spkrs)”, “Measure (3 spkrs)” or “Measure (4 spkrs)” and set “Subwoofer Mode” to “Standard” in “Channel Select”. (☞ p. 197).

- Audyssey Sub EQ HT will not work when “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “Directional”.

NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME +− on the remote control unit or VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.

Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)



1 Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

2 If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

❑ When using a subwoofer with a direct mode

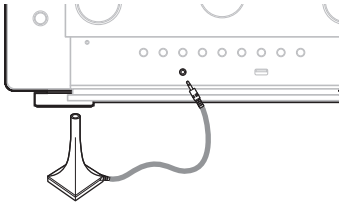
Set the direct mode to “On” and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

❑ When using a subwoofer without a direct mode

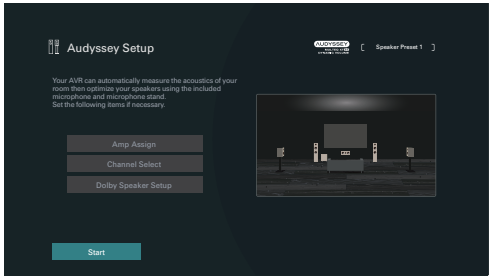
Make the following settings:

- Volume : 10 o’clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off

3 Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



4 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

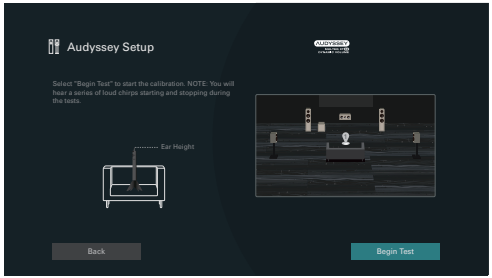
Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**
  The signals output from the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 speaker terminals can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. (“Amp Assign” (☞ p. 205))
- **Channel Select**
  If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.
- **Dolby Speaker Setup**
  Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.
  This can be set when using the Front Dolby Atmos Enabled, Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled or Back Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker.

5 Follow the instructions on the screen display and press “Next” to proceed further.

6 **When the following screen is displayed, select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.**

Start the measurement of the first position.

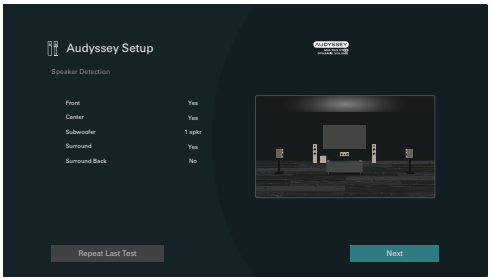


- Measurement requires several minutes.

NOTE

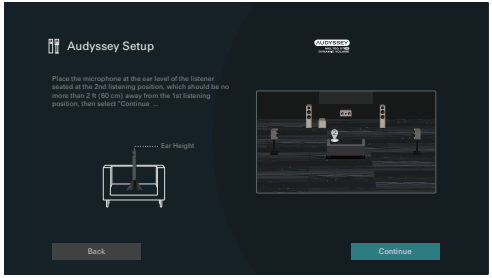
- **If “ERROR” or “CAUTION” is displayed on TV screen:**
  - Go to “Error messages” (☞ p. 202). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
  - If the volume level for the subwoofer is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. See “Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust” (☞ p. 203).

7 **When the detected speaker is displayed, select “Next” and then press ENTER.**



8 Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select “Continue”, then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts.
Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



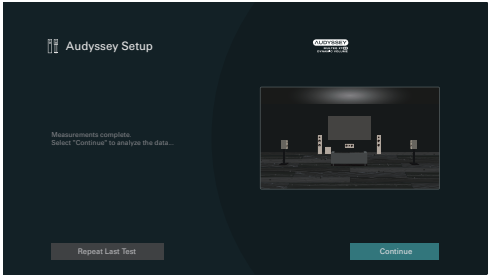
❑ Stopping Audyssey® Setup

① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
② Press cursor Left to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

9 Repeat step 8, measuring positions 3 to 8.

- To skip measuring the fourth and subsequent listening position, press cursor Left to select “Complete” and press ENTER to proceed to step 11.

10 Select “Continue”, then press ENTER.



Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

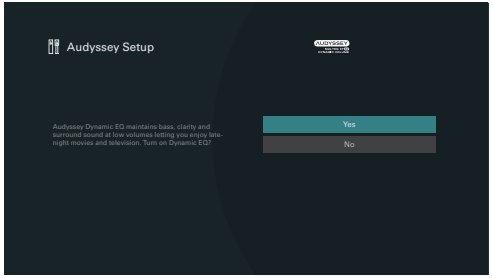
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete.
  The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

NOTE

- When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.

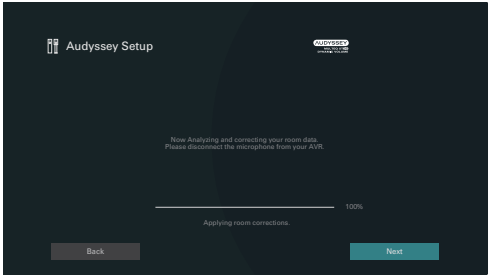
11 Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.

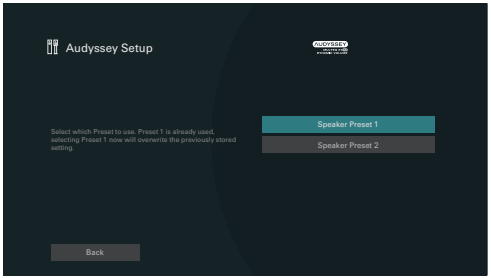


- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume.
  This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

12 When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press “Next”.



- When performing Audyssey® Setup for the first time, the measurement data is automatically saved to “Speaker Preset 1” of “Speaker Preset”.
- If Audyssey® Setup has already been performed, the following “Speaker Preset” selection screen is displayed.



- See “Speaker Preset” for detailed information on the Speaker Preset function. (☞ p. 229)

13 Select “Details” and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

NOTE

- Do not enable new speakers in speaker configuration menu after Audyssey® Setup. If it is changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.

Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	• Sound calibration microphone is not detected. • Not all speakers could be detected.	• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit. • Check the speaker connections.
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	• There is too much noise in the room. • Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.	• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. • Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. • Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. • Adjust the subwoofer's volume.
Front R : None	• The displayed speaker could not be detected.	• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.
Front R : Phase	• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.	• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker. • For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press ▷ to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.

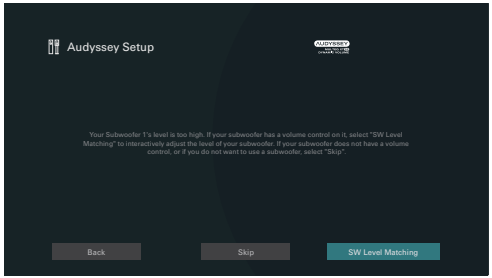
■ Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust

The optimal level of each subwoofer channel for Audyssey® Setup measurement is 75 dB.

During subwoofer level measurement, an error message is displayed when one level of subwoofers is outside the 72 – 78 dB range.

When using a subwoofer with built-in amplifier (active type), adjust the subwoofer volume so that the subwoofer level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

【 Error message 】



1 Select “SW Level Matching” and then press ENTER.

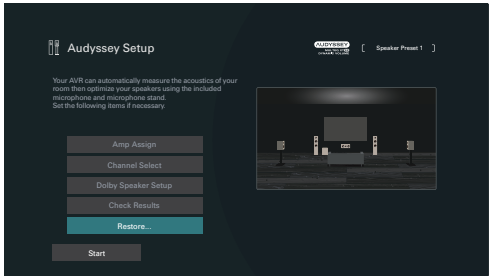
2 Adjust the volume control on your subwoofer so that the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

3 When the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range, select “Next” and then press ENTER.

- If you use two subwoofers, the second subwoofer’s adjustment will be started. Repeat the operation from step 2, 3.

Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set “Restore...” to “Restore”, you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT32) even when you have changed each setting manually.



Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you enable new speakers in the speaker configuration menu after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (☞ p. 175)
- Changing the following settings:
  Speaker size (Large or Small) / Distances / Levels / Crossovers settings will not disable Audyssey® or require running Audyssey® Setup again.
- “Manual Setup” can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

Amp Assign

Select the power amplifier usage method to match your speaker system.

■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the power amp.
You need to configure the detailed settings for the speaker configuration in accordance with the selected mode. Select Assign Mode configure the corresponding detailed settings.

11.1ch:	• Setting to use the 9-channel power amplifier in this unit and an external power amplifier connected to PRE OUT to play back up to 11.1-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE.

9.1ch:	• Settings to assign all power amplifier within this unit to MAIN ZONE to play back up to 9.1-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 9.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.
7.1ch + ZONE2 (Default)**:**	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 to 2-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 9.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 7.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.
7.1ch (Bi-Amp):	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front speaker bi-amp connection to 2-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 9.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 7.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.
5.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2:	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front speaker bi-amp connection to 2-channels. • Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 to 2-channels.

7.1ch + Front B:	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers within this unit for connecting the second set of front speakers. • You can switch between the desired combination of front speakers A and front speakers B. Switch the front speaker using the “Front Speaker” setting. (☞ p. 227) • You can connect speakers for up to 9.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 7.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.
Preamplifier:	• All of the speakers are connected using an external power amplifier and this unit is used as a preamplifier.

- When “Assign Mode” is set to “7.1ch + ZONE2”, “7.1ch (Bi-Amp)” or “7.1ch + Front B” in the menu, the assigned channels are output from HEIGHT2 speaker terminals.
- When Assign Mode is set to “5.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2” in the menu, the front channels for Bi-Amp connection are output from HEIGHT1 speaker terminals, and the ZONE2 channels are output from HEIGHT2 speaker terminals.

■ Floor

Select the floor speakers location.

5ch & SB (Default)**:**	This layout combines a surround back speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch:	This is a basic 5-channel layout that uses front speakers, center speakers and surround speakers.

■ Height

❑ Height Sp

Select the number of the height speakers and ceiling speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None:	Uses no height and ceiling speakers.
2ch (Default)**:**	Uses a set of (two) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
4ch:	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
5ch:	Uses five height or ceiling speakers.
6ch:	Uses six height or ceiling speakers.

- Select the “5ch” setting or higher when using Top Surround or Center Height speakers.
- “5ch” and “6ch” can be selected when “Floor” is “5ch”.

❑ Dolby Sp

Select the number of the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None (Default)**:**	Uses no Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
2ch:	Uses a set of (two) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
4ch:	Uses two sets of (four) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

❑ Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 1 set (2-channels) of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of “Assign Mode” and “Floor” in the menu. (“Assign Mode” (☞ p. 205), “Floor” (☞ p. 207))

[2-channel heigh speakes]

Settings			AUDIO OUT connectors	
Height Sp	**Dolby Sp**	**Layout**	**HEIGHT 1**	**HEIGHT 2**
None	None	-	-	-
2ch	None	Front Height	Front Height	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-
None	2ch	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
		Back Dolby ∗	Back Dolby	-

∗ This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “11.1ch” or “9.1ch” and “Floor” is set to “5ch & SB” in the menu.

❑ Front Layout / Middle Layout / Rear Layout

Set the speaker layout when installing 2 sets (4-channels) or more of Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of “Assign Mode” and “Floor” in the menu. (“Assign Mode” (☞ p. 205), “Floor” (☞ p. 207))

[4-channel heigh speakes]

Settings					AUDIO OUT connectors	
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2
4ch	None		Front Height	Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
			Front Height	Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
			Front Height	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
			Front Height	Surround Height	Front Height	Surround Height
			Top Front	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear
			Top Front	Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
			Top Middle	Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height
2ch	2ch		Front Height	Surround Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby
			Front Height	Back Dolby＊1	Front Height	Back Dolby
			Top Front	Surround Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby
			Top Front	Back Dolby＊1	Top Front	Back Dolby
			Front Dolby	Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear
			Front Dolby	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height
None	4ch		Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby
			Front Dolby	Back Dolby＊1	Front Dolby	Back Dolby

[5-channel heigh speakes]

This setting connects the Top Surround or Center Height Speaker using the Surround Back terminal.
This can be set when the “Assign Mode” setting is “11.1ch” and the “Floor” setting is “5ch”.

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors		
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	SURROUND BACK
5ch	None		Front Height	Top Surround	Rear Height∗2	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround
			Front Height	Surround Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surround Height	L: Top Surround
			Front Height & Center Height	None	Rear Height∗2	Front Height	Rear Height	R: Center Height
			Front Height & Center Height	Surround Height	None	Front Height	Surround Height	R: Center Height

[6-channel heigh speakes]

This setting connects Speakers such as the Top Middle and Top Surround/Center Height using the Surround Back terminal.
This can be set when the “Assign Mode” setting is “11.1ch” and the “Floor” setting is “5ch”.

Settings						AUDIO OUT connectors		
Height Sp	Dolby Sp	NOTE	Front Layout	Middle Layout	Rear Layout	HEIGHT 1	HEIGHT 2	SURROUND BACK
6ch	None		Front Height	Top Middle	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Top Middle
		∗3	Front Height	Surround Height	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Height
			Top Front	Top Middle	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Top Middle
			Front Height & Center Height	Top Surround	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
			Front Height & Center Height	Surround Height & Top Surround	None	Front Height	Surround Height	L: Top Surround R: Center Height
4ch	2ch		Front Height	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height	Surround Dolby
			Top Front	Surround Dolby	Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear	Surround Dolby
2ch	4ch		Front Dolby	Surround Dolby	Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height	Surround Dolby

∗1 This can be selected when using Surround Back speakers.

∗2 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

∗3 Use 2 sets of Height speakers in the appropriate sound modes for Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or Auro-3D playback.
Use the Front Height and Rear Height speakers for Dolby Atmos playback.
Use the Front Height, Surround Height and Rear Height speakers for DTS:X playback.
Use the Front Height and Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.

Bi-Amp

When “Assign Mode” is “7.1ch (Bi-Amp)” and “5.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2”, the speaker terminal used for the bi-amp connection of front speaker is displayed. Depending on the settings of “Assign Mode”, the connector is determined automatically.

HEIGHT 1:	The HEIGHT 1 speaker terminal is used for the bi-amp connection of the front speakers.
HEIGHT 2:	The HEIGHT 2 speaker terminal is used for the bi-amp connection of the front speakers.

Front B

When “Assign Mode” is “7.1ch + Front B”, the speaker terminal used for the second front speakers is displayed.

HEIGHT 2:	The HEIGHT 2 speaker terminal is used for the second front speakers.

ZONE2

When “Assign Mode” is “7.1ch + ZONE2” and “5.1ch (Bi-Amp) + ZONE2”, the speaker terminal used for the second front speakers is displayed.

HEIGHT 2:	The HEIGHT 2 speaker terminal is used for the ZONE2 speakers.

Pre-out

When “Assign Mode” is set to “11.1ch”, selects the PRE OUT connector the external power amplifier used in MAIN ZONE.

The PRE OUT connectors that can be selected differ depending on the combination of “Floor” and “Height” - “Layout” settings configured in the menu. (☞ p. 207)

This setting can be set when using 10 channels or more, including the Floor Speaker, Height Speaker and Dolby Speaker.

FRONT (Default)**:**	The Front left and right preamplifier outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
HEIGHT 2*:	The Height2 left and right preamplifier outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
SURROUND BACK*:	The Surround Back left and right preamplifier outputs are connected to an external amplifier.

* The name of the speaker is displayed that is set for the HEIGHT 2 or SURROUND BACK speaker terminals by the “Height” - “Layout” setting in the menu.

View Terminal Config.

This shows how to connect the speaker terminals and PRE OUT connectors for your “Amp Assign” setting on the menu screen.

Speaker Configuration

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height2.

Front

Set the front speaker size.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.

- When “Subwoofer” is set to “No”, “Front” is automatically set to “Large”.
- When “Front” is set to “Small”, you cannot set speakers other than “Front” to “Large”.

Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

4 spkrs:	Use four subwoofers.
3 spkrs:	Use three subwoofers.
2 spkrs:	Use two subwoofers.
1 spkr (Default)**:**	Use only one subwoofer.
None:	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

- When “Subwoofer” is set to “None” and you set “Front” to “Small”, “Subwoofer” is automatically set to “1 spkr”.

Subwoofer Mode

When you are using multiple subwoofers, set the audio to be output from the subwoofer.

Standard (Default)**:**	All subwoofers output LFE signals and bass below the crossover frequency of all the speakers.
Directional:	All subwoofers output LFE signals. In addition, each subwoofer outputs bass below the crossover frequency of speakers that are placed near them.

- This can be set when “Subwoofer” is set to “4 spkrs”, “3 spkrs” or “2 spkrs”.

Subwoofer Layout

When you are using multiple subwoofers, configure the subwoofer layout. The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the configuration of “Subwoofer Mode”.

[When “Subwoofer” is set to “2 spkrs”]

Left/Right (Default)**:**	Place subwoofers symmetrically on the front side.
Front/Rear:	Place a subwoofer in the middle of the front side and another in the middle of the rear side.

[When “Subwoofer” is set to “3 spkrs”]

FL/FR/Rear:	Place subwoofers symmetrically on the front side and one in the middle of the rear side.

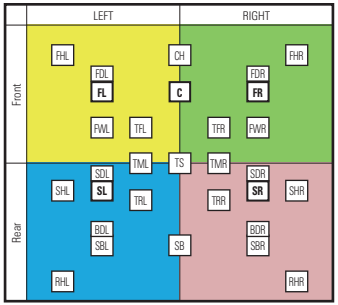
[When “Subwoofer” is set to “4 spkrs”]

FL/FR/RL/RR:	Place the subwoofers in the four corners of the room.

- This can be set when “Subwoofer” is set to “4 spkrs”, “3 spkrs” or “2 spkrs”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “Directional”.
- The name of the Subwoofer that is displayed in the GUI of this unit depends on the setting combination of “Subwoofer”, “Subwoofer Mode”, and “Subwoofer Layout”.

Subwoofer	Subwoofer Mode	Subwoofer Layout	Subwoofer name			
			Subwoofer 1	Subwoofer 2	Subwoofer 3	Subwoofer 4
1 spkr	-	-	Subwoofer 1	-	-	-
2 spkrs	Standard	-	Subwoofer 1	Subwoofer 2	-	-
	Directional	Left/Right	Subwoofer Left	Subwoofer Right	-	-
		Front/Rear	Subwoofer Front	Subwoofer Rear	-	-
3 spkrs	Standard	-	Subwoofer 1	Subwoofer 2	Subwoofer 3	-
	Directional	FL/FR/Rear	Subwoofer FL	Subwoofer FR	Subwoofer Rear	-
4 spkrs	Standard	-	Subwoofer 1	Subwoofer 2	Subwoofer 3	Subwoofer 4
	Directional	FL/FR/RL/RR	Subwoofer FL	Subwoofer FR	Subwoofer RL	Subwoofer RR

- With the “Directional” setting, your room is divided into four areas as shown below so that each subwoofer plays the bass of the speaker set to “Small” which is located within the area.



For example, if Subwoofer = 2 spkrs and Subwoofer Layout = Left/Right, Subwoofer Left (Subwoofer 1) plays the bass of the speakers in the Left area which includes FL/SL and Subwoofer Right (Subwoofer 2) plays the bass of the speakers in the Right area which includes FR/SR.

Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.

- When “Surround” is set to “None”, “Surround Back”, “Surround Dolby” and “Back Dolby” are automatically set to “None”.

Surround Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

2 spkrs (Default)**:**	Use two surround back speakers.
1 spkr:	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L terminal to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.

- When “Surround Back” is set to “None” or “1 spkr”, “Back Dolby” is automatically set to “None”.

Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.

Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.

Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.

Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.

Top Rear

Set the presence and size of the top rear speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top rear speakers are not connected.

Rear Height

Set the presence and size of the rear height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the rear height speakers are not connected.

Surround Height

Set the presence and size of the surround height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround height speakers are not connected.

- When “Front Height” is set to “None”, “Surround Height” is automatically set to “None”.

Back Dolby

Set the presence and size of the back Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the back Dolby speakers are not connected.

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height2.

Center Height

Set the presence and size of the center height speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the center height speaker is not connected.

- When “Surround Height” or “Rear Height” is set to “None”, “Center Height” is automatically set to “None”.
- When “Center” is set to “None”, “Center Height” is automatically set to “None”.

■ Top Surround

Set the presence and size of the top surround speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top surround speaker is not connected.

- When “Surround Height” or “Rear Height” is set to “None”, “Top Surround” is automatically set to “None”.

Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.
Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

■ Unit

Set the unit of distance.

Feet (Default)
Meters

■ Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

1 ft / 0.1 ft (Default: 1 ft)
0.1 m / 0.01 m

Set the distance

0.0 ft – 59.1 ft / 0.00 m – 18.00 m

- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the “Amp Assign” and “Speaker Configuration” settings. (“Amp Assign” (☞ p. 205), “Speaker Configuration” (☞ p. 215))
- Default settings:
  Front L / Front R / Front Height L / Front Height R / Center / Front Dolby L / Front Dolby R / Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2 / Subwoofer 3 / Subwoofer 4: 11.8 ft (3.60 m)
  Speakers other than the above: 9.8 ft (3.00 m)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 19.7 ft (6.00 m).

Dolby Speaker Setup

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

3.0 ft - 10.8 ft / 0.90 m - 3.30 m (Default: 5.9 ft / 1.80 m)

- This can be set when “Front Dolby”, “Surround Dolby” or “Back Dolby” is set to “Large” or “Small” in “Speaker Configuration”.

Set Defaults

The “Distances” settings are returned to the default settings.

Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

■ Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.

While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

- The set “Levels” are reflected in all sound modes.
- If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Channel Level Adjust”. (☞ p. 120)
- When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set “Levels”.

■ Set Defaults

The “Levels” settings are returned to the default settings.

Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)

- “Crossovers” can be set when the “Subwoofer Output” setting is “LFE + Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. (☞ p. 226)
- The default crossover frequency is “80 Hz”, which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency that the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to “250 Hz” when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in “Small”. This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set differ depending on to the “Subwoofer Output” setting. (☞ p. 226)
  - When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Configuration” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (☞ p. 215)
  - When “LFE + Main” is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the “Speaker Configuration” setting. (☞ p. 215)
- The audio settings in “IMAX Audio Settings” are applied during IMAX playback. (☞ p. 168)

Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

■ Subwoofer Output

Selects which low frequency signals are sent to the subwoofer outputs.

LFE (Default)**:**	The subwoofer outputs receive the LFE track, plus any redirected bass from speakers with crossovers set. Use this setting as the default for home theater bass management in a typical room.
LFE + Main:	The subwoofer outputs receive the LFE track, plus redirected bass, and a copy of the low frequency signals from all large speakers.

- “Subwoofer Output” can be set when “Speaker Configuration” - “Subwoofer” in the menu is set to other than “None”. (☞ p. 215)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If “Speaker Configuration” - “Front” and “Center” are set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Output” is set to “LFE”, no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. (☞ p. 215)
  Select “LFE + Main” if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.
- The audio settings in “IMAX Audio Settings” are applied during IMAX playback. (☞ p. 168)

■ LPF for LFE

Selects the crossover point for the LFE channel. Set this when you want to change the playback LFE signal of the subwoofer.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 120 Hz)

- The audio settings in “IMAX Audio Settings” are applied during IMAX playback. (☞ p. 168)

■ LFE Distribution

Adjusts the amount of LFE signal sent to the large floor speakers.

Off (Default)**:**	Floor Speakers do not play LFE signals.
–20 dB – 0 dB	Adjusts the amount of LFE signal sent to the large floor speakers.

- This setting cannot be set when the “Front”, “Center”, “Surround” and “Surround Back” settings of “Speaker Configuration” are all “Small”.

Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

A (Default)**:**	Front speaker A is used.
B :	Front speaker B is used.
A+B :	Both front speakers A and B are used.

- This can be set when “Assign Mode” is set to “7.1ch + Front B”. (☞ p. 207)

Speaker Connection

Selects which speaker and/or pre-out terminals to use for each channel.

■ Select the connection

Speaker + Pre-out (Default)**:**	Speaker and pre-out outputs are active.
Pre-out Only:	Pre-out outputs are active. Speaker outputs are disconnected for enhanced audio quality using only the pre-out terminals.

- This can not be set when “Amp Assign” is set to “Preamplifier” or “Custom”. (☞ p. 207)

Tactile Transducer Setup

Set the level and low pass filter cutoff frequency when using tactile transducers.

■ Tactile Transducer

Sets the tactile transducer option.

Enabled:	Enables tactile transducers.
Disabled (Default)**:**	Disables the tactile transducers.

- For Tactile Transducer connections, use the Subwoofer 4 PRE OUT connector.
- This can not be set when “Speaker Configuration” - “Subwoofer” is set to “4 spkrs”.

■ Level

Adjusts the volume of the tactile transducer output.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

- The “Level” are reflected in all input sources.
- If you wish to adjust the tactile transducer level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Tactile Transducer”. (☞ p. 123)

■ Low Pass Filter

Selects the low pass filter cutoff frequency for the tactile transducer output.

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 180 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default: 80 Hz)

- The “Low Pass Filter” are reflected in all input sources.

Speaker Preset

Two speaker settings can be saved to suit the environments where you use your speakers.

For example, you can configure two presets easily to switch between equalizer or speaker settings measured using Audyssey® Setup if the characteristics of your room differ depending on factors such as whether you use the screen.

If you want to use a preset, select the preset you want to use and then configure settings such as Audyssey® Setup or the speaker settings to save those settings to the preset you have selected.

Speaker Preset 1 (Default)**:**	Saves the settings to Preset 1.
Speaker Preset 2:	Saves the settings to Preset 2.

- The following settings are saved to presets.
  - “Amp Assign” settings
  - “Speaker Configuration” settings
  - “Distances” settings
  - “Levels” settings
  - “Crossovers” settings
  - “Bass” settings
  - “Front Speaker” settings
  - “MultEQ® XT32” data
  - “Graphic EQ” data
- This setting also be configured using “Speaker Preset” in the option menu. (☞ p. 126)

Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.
If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set “DHCP” to “On”. (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).
When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the “IP Address” settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

Information

Display network information.

Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address / MAC Address (Ethernet) / MAC Address (Wi-Fi) / Wi-Fi signal strength

Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.
When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select “Wired (Ethernet)” after connecting a LAN cable.
When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select “Wireless (Wi-Fi)” and configure the “Wi-Fi Setup”. (☞ p. 231)

■ Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

Wired (Ethernet):	Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.
Wireless (Wi-Fi) (Default)**:**	Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.

- “Wired (Ethernet)” is set when “Wi-Fi” is set to “Disabled”. (☞ p. 237)

Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.
The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

■ Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.
   Select “Rescan” if the network cannot be found.
2. Enter your password and select “OK”.

■ Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit using Wi-Fi, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

1. Select “Use iOS Device” on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select “Marantz CINEMA 50” from “SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER...” at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.
3. Tap “Next” on the screen of the iOS device.

- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 10.0.2 or later.

WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect using the push button method.

1. Select “Push Button” on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
   - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

SSID:	Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).
Security:	Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.
Password:	Input the password.

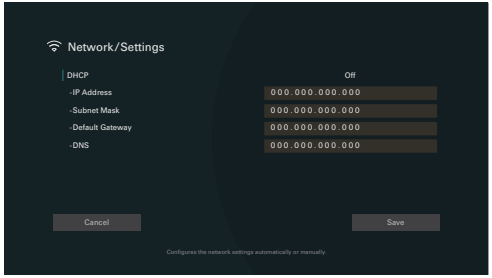
2. Select “Connect” at the end of the setting.

- The Default key of this unit is fixed at “1”. Set Default key of the router to “1” to use.

Settings

Configure the IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to “On” in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.



■ DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

On (Default)**:**	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
Off:	Configure the network settings manually.

■ IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.
  CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254
  CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254
  CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

■ Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input “255.255.255.0”.

Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

DNS

Enter the DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider.

- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings. (☞ p. 69)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.

Network Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

Off In Standby:	Suspend network function during standby.
Always On (Default)**:**	Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.

- When using the web control function, Marantz AVR Remote App or HEOS App, use with the “Network Control” setting set to “Always On”.

NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

■ Friendly Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select “Other”, you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

Home Theater /Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other

- Up to 30 characters can be input.
- The default Friendly Name on first use is “Marantz CINEMA 50”.

■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.

Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

OK	
Error:	The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.

- When connected using a wireless LAN, “Connection Wireless (Wi-Fi)” will be displayed.

■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

OK	
Error:	Failed to communicate with the router. Check the router settings.

■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

OK	
Error:	Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

AirPlay

Settings for Apple AirPlay.

■ AirPlay Name

Displays the name which identifies this unit on Apple devices.

- If you registered this unit to the Apple Home app, use the app to change the name.

■ AirPlay

Enables/disables the Apple AirPlay.

On (Default)**:**	Enables Apple AirPlay.
Off:	Disables Apple AirPlay.

Spotify Connect

Toggles access to Spotify Connect.

On (Default)**:**	Enables Spotify Connect.
Off:	Disables Spotify Connect.

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth

Enables/disables the Wi-Fi and Bluetooth radios.

■ Wi-Fi

The Wi-Fi function can be stopped to prevent noise that affects the sound quality. Using a wired LAN to connect this unit to the network enables playback with a high sound quality.

Enabled (Default)**:**	Enables the Wi-Fi function.
Disabled:	Disables the Wi-Fi function.

■ Bluetooth

Stopping Bluetooth receiver and transmitter functions reduces a source of noise that affects sound quality, enabling higher sound quality playback.

Enabled (Default)**:**	Enables the Bluetooth function.
Disabled:	Disables the Bluetooth function.

HEOS Account

Make HEOS Account-related settings.
HEOS Account is needed in order to use HEOS Favorites.
The menu displayed differs depending on the status of the HEOS Account.

You have not signed in

■ I have a HEOS Account

If you already have a HEOS Account, enter the current account name and password to sign in.

■ Create Account

If you do not have a HEOS Account, create a new HEOS Account.

■ Forgot Password

If you have forgotten the password, an email explaining how to reset the password will be sent.

You have already signed in

■ Signed in as

The currently signed in HEOS Account is displayed.

■ Change Location

Change the regional settings for the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Change Password

Change the password for the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Delete Account

Delete the signed in HEOS Account.

■ Sign Out

Sign out from the HEOS Account.

General

Make various other settings.

Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

English / Français / Español (Default: English)

- "Language" can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.
  1. Press and hold the main unit's ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
     "Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
  2. Press DIMMER on the main unit twice.
     "GUI Language ENGLISH" appears on the display.
  3. Use the main unit's TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – and set the language.
  4. Press the main unit's STATUS to complete the setting.

Owner's Manual

Shows URL and QR code to access the online Owner's Manual from your mobile device.

ECO

Configure the ECO Mode and auto standby mode settings.

■ ECO Mode

This mode can reduce the power consumption and heat generation of this unit when power on.
This is done by reducing the power supply line to the power amplifier, in turn the maximum power output.

On:	Power savings are always active, regardless of volume or input signal.
Auto (Default)**:**	Gives you the best balance between power savings and maximum power output: For low volume levels, the power savings are active. If you increase the volume level, the power savings are switched off automatically, so you can enjoy maximum output power without distortion. If the volume is set to a high level but no input signal is detected for more than 2 minutes, this unit will enable power savings. When an input signal is detected again or the input source is changed, this unit will automatically turn off power savings again at high volume levels.
Off:	No power savings.

- When the unit is switching between the different power saving states in “ECO Mode: Auto”, you may notice a click noise from the inside of this unit, this is normal.
- If content is paused for more than 2 minutes and playback is resumed from the same source at these high volume levels, there may be short delay before maximum power is restored.
- “ECO Mode” can also be switched by pressing ECO on the remote control unit.

Power On Default

Set the mode to ECO when the power is on.

Last (Default)**:**	The ECO Mode will be set to the previous setting before the power was switched off.
On:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “On”.
Auto:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “Auto”.
Off:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “Off”.

On Screen Display

Display the power consumption of this unit using a meter on the TV screen.

Always On:	Always display the meter on the TV screen.
Auto (Default)**:**	Display the meter when changing the mode or volume.
Off:	Do not display the meter.

■ Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

❑ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.
Before the unit enters standby mode, “Auto Standby” is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

60 min:	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
30 min:	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
15 min:	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
Off (Default)**:**	The unit does not go into standby automatically.

❑ ZONE2

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

8 hours:	Switches ZONE2 the standby state after about 8 hours.
4 hours:	Switches ZONE2 to the standby state after about 4 hours.
2 hours:	Switches ZONE2 to the standby state after about 2 hours.
Off (Default)**:**	Does not automatically switch ZONE2 to the standby state.

Bluetooth Transmitter

Sets this unit's Bluetooth transmitter.

Set to use Bluetooth headphones to listen to audio playing in the MAIN ZONE.

Transmitter

Enables or disables the Bluetooth transmitter.

On:	Enables the Bluetooth transmitter feature.
Off (Default)**:**	Disables the Bluetooth transmitter feature.

Output Mode

Selects the audio output method.

Bluetooth + Speakers (Default)**:**	Audio is output to Bluetooth headphones and main zone speakers.
Bluetooth Only:	Audio is output to Bluetooth headphones only.

Connected device

Displays the Bluetooth device connected to this unit.

Device List

Available devices are displayed in the list once you start pairing mode on the Bluetooth headphones you want to connect. Select your Bluetooth headphones from the list to pair them.
This unit can only pair with one Bluetooth headphone at a time. However, up to 8 Bluetooth headphones can be registered. Switch between registered devices from Device List in the “Bluetooth Transmitter” setup menu.
To remove a saved Bluetooth device from the list, use the cursor Up/Down buttons to select it, then press the OPTION button and select “Forget This Device”.

- “Output Mode” can also be set from “Bluetooth Transmitter” in the option menu.
- A2DP profile-compatible Bluetooth speakers can be connected following the same steps used to connect Bluetooth headphones.

NOTE

- Bluetooth transmitter and Bluetooth receiver function cannot be used at the same time. Settings in this menu are not available when listening to music on a Bluetooth device in any zone.
- Even when “Transmitter” is set to “On”, press Bluetooth on the remote control to select the “Bluetooth” source and enable the Bluetooth receiver function.
To listen to music stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones on this unit, press Bluetooth on the remote control to switch the input source to Bluetooth, then reconnect the Bluetooth device.
- Menu settings for Bluetooth Transmitter are not available when this unit is grouped within the HEOS App.

ZONE2 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2.

- Values set for “Volume Limit” and “Power On Volume” are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume “Scale”. (☞ p. 174)

Bass

Adjust bass.

-10 dB – +10 dB (Default : 0 dB)

Treble

Adjust treble.

-10 dB – +10 dB (Default : 0 dB)

High Pass Filter

Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.

On:	The low range is attenuated.
Off (Default)**:**	The low range is not attenuated.

L Ch Level

Adjust the left channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

R Ch Level

Adjust the right channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

Channel

Set whether to playback in stereo or monaural.

Stereo (Default)**:**	Stereo playback.
Mono:	Monaural playback.

HDMI Audio

Selects the audio signal format for playing an HDMI source in ZONE2.

Through (Default)**:**	The HDMI audio signal is passed through this unit to the device in ZONE2.
PCM:	The HDMI audio signal input into this unit is converted to a PCM signal that can be output from the ZONE2 PRE OUT connectors or speaker terminals.

Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

Variable (Default)**:**	Volume can be adjusted.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB):	Volume is fixed at the desired level. The volume cannot be adjusting using the remote control unit.

- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “ –79.5 dB – 18.0 dB”. (☞ p. 174)

Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 – 80 (–20 dB – 0 dB) (Default : 70 (-10 dB))	
Off:	Do not set a maximum volume.

- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (☞ p. 245)
- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB”. (☞ p. 174)

Power On Volume

Sets the initial volume level when the power is turned on.

Last (Default)**:**	Sets the power-on level to the last-used volume level.
Mute:	Sets the power-on level to mute level.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB):	Sets a specific power-on level.

- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (☞ p. 245)
- The dB value is displayed when the “Scale” setting is “-79.5 dB - 18.0 dB”. (☞ p. 174)

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when mute is on.

Full (Default)**:**	Sets the mute level to full mute (no sound).
-40 dB :	Sets the mute level to 40 dB lower than the current volume level.
-20 dB :	Sets the mute level to 20 dB lower than the current volume level.

Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

MAIN ZONE / ZONE2	
Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.

- Up to 10 characters can be input.

Smart Select Names

Change the smart select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

Smart Select 1 / Smart Select 2 / Smart Select 3 / Smart Select 4	
Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited smart select name.

- Up to 16 characters can be input.

Trigger Out

Select the conditions for activating trigger out.
For details about how to connect the DC OUT jack, see “DC OUT jack” (☞ p. 74).

❑ When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2)

Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to “On”.

❑ When setting for input source

Activate trigger out when the input source set to “On” is selected.

❑ When setting for HDMI monitor

Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to “On” is selected.

On:	Activate trigger on this mode.
– – –:	Do not activate trigger on this mode.

Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

■ Brightness

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

Bright (Default)**:**	Normal display brightness.
Dim:	Reduced display brightness.
Dark:	Very low display brightness.
Off:	Turns the display off.

- You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.

Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates, updates the firmware.

■ Check for Update

Check for firmware updates.

The firmware can be updated if a firmware update has been released.

Update Now:	Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.
Update Later:	Update later.

- This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If an update still cannot be performed, an “Update Error” message appears in the display. See “Troubleshooting” – “Update error messages” for information on update error messages. (☞ p. 279)
  Check the conditions according to the message and try the update again.
- This menu cannot be selected when “Allow Update” is set to “Off”.

■ Auto-Update

Turns on Automatic Updates so that feature updates are automatically downloaded and installed when this unit is in standby mode.

❑ Auto-Update

This unit will automatically update to the newest firmware when in standby mode.

On:	Turns on Automatic Updates.
Off (Default)**:**	Turns off Automatic Updates.

❑ Time Zone

Change the time zone.

Set the time zone that matches the area where you live.

- This menu cannot be selected when “Allow Update” is set to “Off”.

Allow Update

Enable or disable updates for this unit.

On (Default)**:**	Enables this unit to receive updates.
Off:	Prevents this unit from receiving update.

- This setting causes Incompatibilities between this unit and HEOS App.

Notes concerning use of "Update"

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 69)
- Do not turn off the power until updating is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating procedure to be completed.
- Once updating starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update fails, press and hold the ⏻ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. After about 1 minute, "Please wait" appears on the display and update restarts. If the error continues, check the network environment.

Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

Sound Mode:	The currently set sound mode.
Input Signal:	The input signal type.
Format:	The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).
Sample Rate:	The input signal's sampling frequency.
Offset:	The dialogue normalization correction value.
Flag:	This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

HDMI Signal Info.

Resolution / HDR / Color Space / Pixel Depth / ALLM / QFT / FRL Rate

HDMI Monitor 1 / HDMI Monitor 2

Interface / HDR / Resolutions / Enhanced Features / Max FRL Rate

- A or B may be displayed at the end of resolution. A represents uncompressed video and B represents compressed video.
- Refer to "About HDMI" for more information about ALLM, QFT and FRL. (☞ p. 285)

ZONE

Show information about current settings.

MAIN ZONE:	This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.
ZONE2:	This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.

Firmware

Version:	Displays information for the current firmware.
DTS Version:	Displays the current DTS version.

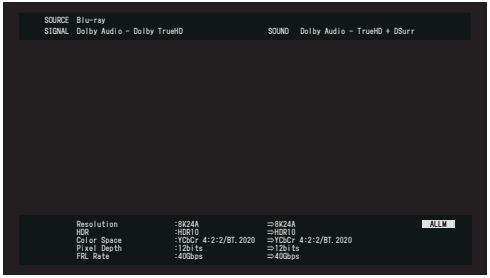
Notifications

Displays and sets notifications.
Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

Notification Alerts

On (Default)**:**	Notification messages are displayed.
Off:	Notification messages are not displayed.

- Pressing INFO on the remote control switches the display to show information such as the input source name, the volume, the sound mode name, the video input/output signals, and other information. The FRL Rate is displayed when the “4K/8K Signal Format” setting of this unit is “8K Enhanced” and the connected TV supports FRL transmission mode.



Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Marantz collects anonymous information about how you use this unit (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings). Marantz will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

Yes:	Provide information on the operating status of this unit.
No:	Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.

Save & Load

Save and restore device settings by using a USB memory device.

- Use a USB memory device that has at least 128 MB of free space and is formatted to FAT32. Data may not Save/Load correctly to some USB memory devices.
- It may take up to 10 minutes for data to Save/Load. Do not turn off the power until the process is complete.

■ Save Configuration

Current unit settings are stored on the USB memory device.

When the settings are saved correctly, “Saved” appears on the display and the file “config.avr” is created on the USB memory device.

- Do not change the file name of the created file. Doing so will prevent the file from being recognized as a settings file when restoring.

■ Load Configuration

Settings saved on the USB memory device are restored.

When the saved settings are restored correctly, “Loaded” appears on the display and the unit automatically restarts.

Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

■ Lock

On:	Turn protection on.
Off (Default)**:**	Turn protection off.

- When cancelling the setting, set “Lock” to “Off”.

NOTE

- When “Lock” is set to “On”, no setting items are displayed except for “Setup Lock”.

Reset

Returns settings to the factory default.

Initialization can be performed for all unit settings or for Network settings only.

■ All Settings

All settings are reset to the factory default values.

■ Network Settings

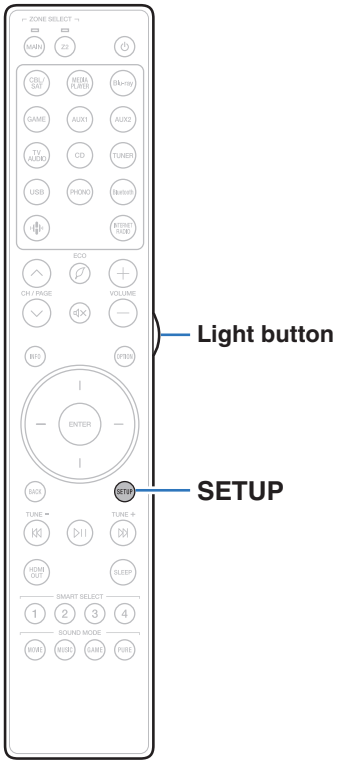
Only network settings are reset to the factory default values.

- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the “Save & Load” function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (☞ p. 252)
- The “Reset” operation can also be performed by using the button on the main unit. For details on resetting all of the settings to the factory defaults see “Resetting factory settings” (☞ p. 280), and for details on resetting the network settings to the factory defaults see “Resetting network settings” (☞ p. 281).

NOTE

- Do not disconnect the power or turn the device off during network settings initialization.

Setting the back light of the remote control unit



You can turn off the backlight of the remote control unit.

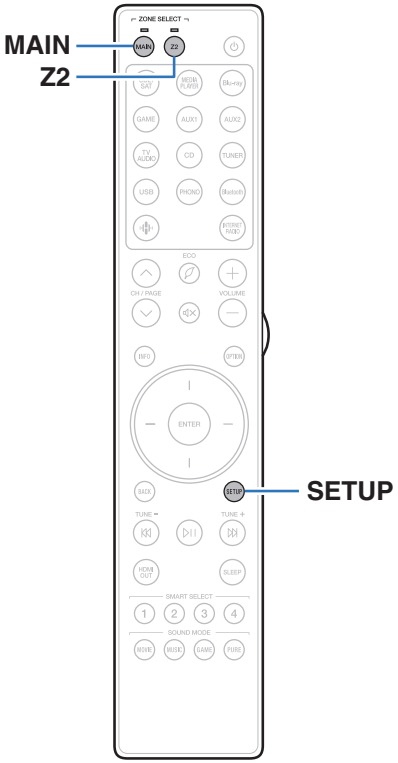
- Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

Disabling the backlight

1 Press and hold both SETUP and Light button until the MAIN and Z2 indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.

- The backlight function can be turned on by performing step 1 again while the backlight function is off.

Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit



To prevent accidental misuse, you can set the zone for which the remote control unit is used.

1 Press and hold down either MAIN or Z2 and SETUP at the same time until the MAIN and Z2 indicators flash green.

MAIN:	When only using MAIN ZONE
Z2:	When using MAIN ZONE and ZONE2

■ Contents

Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake 257
I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on 257
I want to have the subwoofer always output audio 257
I want to make human voices in the movies clearer 257
I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level 257
I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies 257
I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one 258
I want to combine a desired video with the current music 258
I want to skip unused input sources 258
I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc. 258
I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console 258
I want to use the external power amplifier to the Front channel for my 11.1-channel speaker system 258

Troubleshooting

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off 260
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit 261
Display on this unit shows nothing 261
No sound comes out 262
Desired sound does not come out 263
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs 266
No video is shown on the TV 267
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV 269
The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal 269
AirPlay cannot be played back 270
USB memory devices cannot be played back 271
Bluetooth cannot be played back 272
The Internet radio cannot be played back 274
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back 275
Various online services cannot be played 276
The HDMI Control function does not work 276
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network 277
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly 278
Update error messages 279

Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for “Volume Limit” in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (☞ p. 174), “Volume Limit” (☞ p. 245))

I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for “Power On Volume” in the menu. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (☞ p. 174), “Power On Volume” (☞ p. 245))

I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When “Subwoofer Output” in the menu is set to “LFE + Main”, you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (☞ p. 226)

I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Select a setting that makes the dialog easier to hear in the option menu “Dialog Enhancer”. (☞ p. 119)

I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set “Dynamic EQ” in the menu to “On”. This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (☞ p. 176)

I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set “Dynamic Volume” in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (☞ p. 177)

I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. (☞ p. 194)

I want to combine a desired video with the current music

- Set “Video Select” in the option menu to “On”. You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top Box or Blu-ray, etc. while listening to music from the Tuner, CD, Phono, HEOS Music, USB or Bluetooth. (☞ p. 124)

I want to skip unused input sources

- Set unused input sources for “Hide Sources” in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the INPUT selector knob on this unit. (☞ p. 193)

I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.

- Set “All Zone Stereo” in the option menu to “Start”. You can simultaneously play back music in another room (ZONE2) that is played back in MAIN ZONE. (☞ p. 125)

I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I’m playing a game on my game console

- When the video is delayed against button operations with the controller on the game console, set “Video Mode” in the menu to “Game”. (☞ p. 185)

I want to use the external power amplifier to the Front channel for my 11.1-channel speaker system

- Set “Pre-out” to “Front” to connect your external power amplifier for the front channels. (☞ p. 214)

Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. **Are the connections correct?**
2. **Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?**
3. **Are the other devices operating properly?**

- If steps 1 to 3 above do not improve the problem, restarting the device may improve the problem.
  Continue pressing the ⏻ button on the unit until "Restart" appears in the display, or remove and re-insert the power cord of the unit.

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.
If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

Power does not turn on.

- Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet. (☞ p. 75)

Power automatically turns off.

- The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again. (☞ p. 142)
- “Auto Standby” is set. “Auto Standby” is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable “Auto Standby”, set “Auto Standby” on the menu to “Off”. (☞ p. 242)

Power turns off and the protection circuit indicator flashes in orange approx. every 2 seconds.

- The protection circuit has been activated due to a rise in temperature within this unit. Turn the power off, wait about an hour until this unit cools down sufficiently, and then turn the power on again. (☞ p. 310)
- Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation.

Power turns off and the protection circuit indicator flashes in orange approx. every 0.5 seconds.

- Check the speaker connections. The protection circuit may have been activated because speaker cable core wires came in contact with each other or a core wire was disconnected from the connector and came in contact with the rear panel of this unit. After unplugging the power cord, take corrective action such as firmly re-twisting the core wire or taking care of the connector, and then reconnect the wire. (☞ p. 38)
- Turn down the volume and turn on the power again. (☞ p. 77)
- This unit’s amplifier circuit has failed. Unplug the power cord and contact our customer service center.

Power does not turn off even when the power button is pressed, and the display shows “ZONE2 On”.

- The power supply of ZONE2 is turned to ON. To turn off the power supply of this unit (standby), press the ZONE2 ON/OFF on the main unit, or press the POWER ⏻ button after pressing the Z2 button on the remote control unit to turn off the power supply of ZONE2.

Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.

- Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries. (☞ p. 10)
- Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°. (☞ p. 10)
- Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.
- Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks. (☞ p. 10)
- The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.
- The operation target zone does not correspond to the zone setting specified on the remote control unit. Press the MAIN or Z2 button to select the operating zone of the remote control. (☞ p. 163)
- When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.

Display on this unit shows nothing

Display is off.

- Set "Brightness" on the menu to something other than "Off". (☞ p. 247)
- When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off. (☞ p. 130)

No sound comes out

No sound comes out of speakers.

- Check the connections for all devices. (☞ p. 38)
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Check that speaker cables are properly connected. Check that cable core wires come in contact with the metal part on speaker terminals. (☞ p. 38)
- Securely tighten the speaker terminals. Check speaker terminals for looseness. (☞ p. 38)
- Check that a proper input source is selected. (☞ p. 77)
- Adjust the volume. (☞ p. 78)
- Cancel the mute mode. (☞ p. 78)
- Check the digital audio input connector setting. (☞ p. 190)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.
- When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the speaker terminal and PRE OUT connector.
- Audio is output to your Bluetooth headphones, but not to speakers or pre-outs when “Output Mode” set to “Bluetooth Only”. Change “Output Mode” to “Bluetooth + Speakers” to output audio from your Bluetooth headphones as well as your speakers or pre-outs. (☞ p. 243)

No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.

- When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.

Desired sound does not come out

The volume does not increase.

- The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using “Limit” on the menu. (☞ p. 174)
- Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.

The volume of Bluetooth headphones does not decrease.

- Bluetooth headphones volume cannot be adjusted from this unit. Use a Bluetooth headphones with volume adjustment.

No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.

- Check the connection of the HDMI connectors. (☞ p. 58)
- When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “AVR”. To output from the TV, set “TV”. (☞ p. 180)
- When using the HDMI Control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV. (☞ p. 141)

When an eARC function-compatible television is connected, television audio is not output from the speaker connected to this unit

- eARC function settings may be required depending on the eARC function-compatible television you are using. Make sure eARC is set to on if this setting exists on your television. For more information, check your television’s owner’s manual.
- Make sure the input source of this unit is “TV Audio”.
- The eARC function does not operate when the HDMI input connector is set to the “TV Audio” input source. To enable eARC function operation, remove the HDMI input connector setting, then restart this unit and the television. (☞ p. 191)

No sound comes out of a specific speaker.

- Check that speaker cables are properly connected.
- Check that a selection other than “None” is set for the “Speaker Configuration” setting in menu. (☞ p. 215)
- Check the “Assign Mode” setting in the menu. (☞ p. 205)
- When the sound mode is “Stereo”, audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.
- Audio is not output from the surround back speaker if “Speaker Virtualizer” is set to “On” when “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” is set to “1 spkr” in the menu. (☞ p. 167)
- When “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” is set to “2 spkrs”, “Speaker Configuration” - “Center” is set to “Large” or “Small”, and sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS”, surround audio is output from the surround back speaker. Audio is not output from the surround speaker. (☞ p. 219)

No sound is produced from subwoofer.

- Check the subwoofer connections.
- Turn on the subwoofer's power.
- Set "Speaker Configuration" - "Subwoofer" in the menu to "1 spkr", "2 spkrs", "3 spkrs" or "4 spkrs". (☞ p. 215)
- When "Speaker Configuration" - "Front" in the menu is set to "Large", depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (☞ p. 215)
- When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer. (☞ p. 226)
- You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the "Subwoofer Output" to "LFE + Main". (☞ p. 226)

DTS sound is not output.

- Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to "DTS".

Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.

- Make HDMI connections. (☞ p. 61)
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, "PCM" is set by default.

DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.

- DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.

Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.

- Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.

IMAX DTS:X cannot be selected.

- IMAX DTS:X and IMAX DTS cannot be selected but DTS:X and DTS can be selected, when the headphones are used.

Sound modes other than "Stereo" or "Direct" cannot be selected.

- Only "Stereo" or "Direct" can be selected for the sound mode if Headphone:X signals are input.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected.

- These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup. (☞ p. 194)
- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”. (☞ p. 129)
- Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected when sound mode is “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+ Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
- These cannot be selected when using the headphones.

“M-DAX” cannot be selected.

- Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, “M-DAX” cannot be used. (☞ p. 173)
- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”. (☞ p. 129)

No audio is output from PRE OUT or speakers for ZONE2.

- In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are in 2ch PCM format.
- In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from the HDMI connector are in 2ch PCM format. To play back the audio in ZONE2 irrespective of the input signal format, set “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. Depending on the played back device, the audio may not be played back even with this setting. In that case, set the audio format to “PCM (2ch)” on the played back device. (☞ p. 245)
- When listening to audio from a Bluetooth device in ZONE2, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 98.4 ft/30 m.

Sound mode settings are not available when using Bluetooth headphones. Audio menu settings are also not available.

- This unit cannot change sound mode or audio menu settings for audio output to Bluetooth headphones.

Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.

- When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.
- The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.

When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.

- When making a call, keep a distance of 0.7 ft/20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.

Noise often occurs in FM/AM broadcasting.

- Change the antenna orientation or position. (☞ p. 67)
- Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.
- Use an outdoor antenna. (☞ p. 67)
- Separate the antenna from other connection cables. (☞ p. 67)

The sounds appear to be distorted.

- Lower the volume. (☞ p. 78)
- Set “Off” to the “ECO Mode”. When “On” or “Auto” is in the “ECO Mode”, the audio may by distorted when the playback volume is high. (☞ p. 239)

Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.

- The frequency band used by the wireless LAN is also used by microwave ovens, cordless telephones, wireless game controllers and other wireless LAN devices. Using such devices at the same time as this unit may cause sound to cut out due to electronic interference. Sound cut out can be improved using the following methods. (☞ p. 69)
  - Install devices that cause interference away from this unit.
  - Turn off the power supply to devices that cause interference.
  - Change the settings of the router channel to which this unit is connected to. (See the instruction manual of the wireless router for details on how to change the channel.)
  - Switch to a wired LAN connection.
- Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection. (☞ p. 231)

No video is shown on the TV

No picture appears.

- Check the connections for all devices. (☞ p. 58)
- Insert connection cables all the way in.
- Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.
- Check cables for damage.
- Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit. (☞ p. 190)
- Check that the proper input source is selected. (☞ p. 77)
- Check the video input connector setting. (☞ p. 190)
- Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV. (☞ p. 250)
- Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly. (☞ p. 286)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 or HDCP 2.3.
- To play back a 4K video, use a “High Speed HDMI Cable” or an “High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet”. In order to achieve a higher fidelity for 4K videos, it is recommended to use a “Premium High Speed HDMI Cables” or an “Premium High Speed HDMI Cables with Ethernet” that has an HDMI Premium Certified Cable label on the product package.
- Use a certified “Ultra High Speed HDMI cable” to enjoy 8K or 4K 120Hz video. If you use a different HDMI cable, the video may not display or other problems may occur.

No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.

- With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP). (☞ p. 286)

While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.

- The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated.

When using HDMI ZONE2, the video output in MAIN ZONE is interrupted.

- When ZONE2 is operated with the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, video in MAIN ZONE may be interrupted.

The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.

- The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played.
  - Some images of 3D video content
  - Computer resolution images (example: VGA)
  - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3
  - Some kind of HDR signals
  - Some kind of game contents
  - Compressed video
- When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly. (☞ p. 251)
- In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode. (☞ p. 128)
- Set the “TV Format” setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV. (☞ p. 189)

The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different from normal

The color of the menu screen and operations content displayed on the television is different.

- Performing operations on this unit during playback of a Dolby Vision signal may cause variance in the color display of the menu screen and operations content. This is a characteristic of the Dolby Vision signal and is not a malfunction.

AirPlay cannot be played back

The AirPlay icon is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit. (☞ p. 69)
- The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.

Audio is not output.

- The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.
- The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit. (☞ p. 114)

Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.

- Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.
- Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.

iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.

- Enable the “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers” setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.

USB memory devices cannot be played back

USB memory device is not recognized.

- Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device. (☞ p. 66)
- Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.
- This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.
- The USB memory device must be formatted to “FAT32” or “NTFS”.
- Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.

Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. (☞ p. 79)
- This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.
- When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.

iOS and Android devices are not recognized.

- The USB port of this unit does not support playback from iOS and Android devices.

Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.

- Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit. (☞ p. 289)
- You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.

Bluetooth cannot be played back

Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.

- The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.
- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.
- Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.

Smartphones and other Bluetooth devices cannot be connected.

- Smartphones and other Bluetooth devices cannot be connected when "Transmitter" is set to "On". Press Bluetooth on the remote control to switch the input source to Bluetooth, then connect the device. (☞ p. 243)

Cannot connect Bluetooth headphones.

- Bring the Bluetooth headphones near to this unit.
- Turn the power of the Bluetooth headphones off and on again, and then try again.
- Go to "General" - "Bluetooth Transmitter", and set "Transmitter" to "On" within the menu. (☞ p. 243)
- Make sure this unit is not already connected to another pair of Bluetooth headphones. Check the currently connected Bluetooth headphones by pressing INFO on the remote control or STATUS button on the unit.
  Disconnect the connected Bluetooth headphones before connecting the ones you want to use.
- Bluetooth headphones cannot be connected if Bluetooth is being used as an input source in any zone.
- Bluetooth headphones cannot be connected if this unit is grouped in the HEOS App. Remove this unit from the group to enable Bluetooth headphones connection.
- The Bluetooth headphones cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.
- Connection and operation are not guaranteed for all Bluetooth-enabled devices.
- This unit can only connect to one Bluetooth headphone at a time. However, up to 8 Bluetooth headphones can be registered. You can switch between registered devices from "Device List" in the "Bluetooth Transmitter" menu. (☞ p. 243)

The sound is cut off.

- Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.
- Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.
- To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.
- Reconnect the Bluetooth device.

The sound is cut off or noise occurs when using Bluetooth headphones.

- Move the Bluetooth headphones closer to this unit.
- Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth headphones and this unit.
- Reconnect the Bluetooth headphones.
- To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.
- We recommend using wired LAN to connect this unit and other devices.
- Bluetooth transmits on the 2.4 GHz band which may interfere with Wi-Fi transmitted on this band. Connect this unit and other devices to Wi-Fi network on a 5 GHz band if available on your Wi-Fi router.

Audio is delayed on my Bluetooth headphones.

- This unit cannot adjust audio delay on Bluetooth headphones.

The Internet radio cannot be played back

A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.

- The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status. (☞ p. 69)
- Perform the network diagnostic mode.

Internet Radio cannot be played.

- The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC. (☞ p. 292)
- The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.
- The IP address is not properly set. (☞ p. 233)
- Check the power of the router is on.
- To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to “On” on this unit. (☞ p. 233)
- To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address on this unit. (☞ p. 233)
- Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station. (☞ p. 99)
- The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.

Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.

- Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.

Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

Files stored on a computer cannot be played.

- Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format. (☞ p. 291)
- Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.
- The USB port of this unit cannot be used for connection to a computer.
- Media sharing settings on the server or NAS do not allow this unit. Change the settings to allow this unit. For details, see the owner's manual of the server or NAS.

Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.

- The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.
- Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.
- Server is not running. Launch the server.
- IP address of this unit is wrong. Check the IP address of this unit. (☞ p. 230)

Music files on PC cannot be played back.

- Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network. (☞ p. 69)

Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.

- Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed. (☞ p. 291)

Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.

- If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.
- If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.
- If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.

Various online services cannot be played

Various online services cannot be played.

- The online service may have been discontinued.

The HDMI Control function does not work

The HDMI Control function does not work.

- Check that “HDMI Control” in the menu is set to “On”. (☞ p. 182)
- You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI Control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI Control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly. (☞ p. 141)
- Check that the HDMI Control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit. (☞ p. 141)
- When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again. (☞ p. 141)
- The HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is not compatible with the HDMI Control function. Use the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector to connect to the TV. (☞ p. 58)

Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

Cannot connect to the network.

- The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit. (☞ p. 232)
- Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.
- Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.
- This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).

Cannot connect to a WPS Router.

- Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.
- Press the WPS button on the router and then press the “Connect” button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.
- A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption type to “None”, “WPA-PSK (AES)” or WPA2-PSK (AES). (☞ p. 232)
- If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button on the router. In this case, use the “Scan Networks” or “Manual” method to connect.

Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.

- Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.
- When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 10.0.2 or later needs to be supported.

When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly

When using MAIN ZONE, video output is interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

- With the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, when you operate MAIN ZONE, video may be interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.

When using HDMI ZONE2, no video or audio is output from the TV in ZONE2.

- Check that the power is on for ZONE2. (☞ p. 156)
- Check the input source for ZONE2. (☞ p. 156)
- The HDMI 5 and HDMI 6 connector does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.
- In ZONE2, playback is only possible when the input signals are HDMI signals.
- When the TV does not support the input audio format, audio is not output. Set the audio format to “PCM” on the playback device. Alternatively, set “ZONE2 Setup” - “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. (☞ p. 245)
- When the TV is not compatible with the resolution of the input video, no video is output. Set the output resolution on the playback device to a resolution that is compatible with the TV.

When using HDMI ZONE2, MAIN ZONE audio is played back as PCM.

- When the same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, the audio format is limited according to the specifications of the TV in ZONE2.

Update error messages

If an update is interrupted or fails, an error message appears.

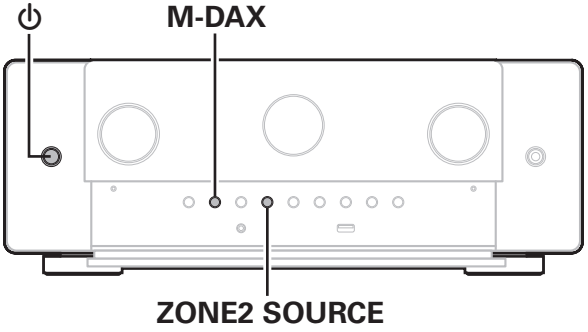
Display	Description
Connection failed. Please check your network, then try again.	The network connection is unstable. Connection to the server failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
Update failed. Please check your network, then try again.	The download of the firmware failed. Check your network environment and try the update again.
Please check your network, unplug and reconnect the power cord, and try again.	The update failed. Press and hold the ⏻ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. The update restarts automatically.
Please contact customer service in your area.	This unit may be broken. Contact our Customer Service Center in your area.

Resetting factory settings

If the indicators are incorrect or the unit cannot be operated, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. (☞ p. 259)

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.



1 **Turn off the power using ⏻.**

2 **Press ⏻ while simultaneously pressing M-DAX and ZONE2 SOURCE.**

3 **Remove your fingers from the two buttons when “Initialized” appears on the display.**

- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the “Save & Load” function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (☞ p. 252)
- You can also reset all settings to the factory defaults using “Reset” - “All Settings” in the menu. (☞ p. 253)

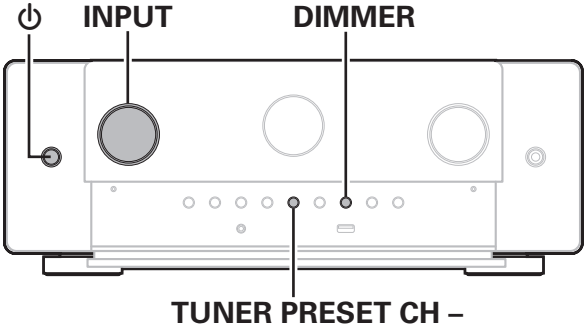
Resetting network settings

If network contents cannot be played or the unit cannot connect to the network, restarting the unit may improve the problem. We recommend restarting the unit before returning the settings to the default settings. (☞ p. 259)

If the operations are not improved by restarting the unit, follow the steps below.

Network settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.

However, the menu “Amp Assign”, “Speaker Configuration” and “Video” settings are not reset.



1 **Press ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

2 **Turn INPUT selector to select “HEOS Music”.**

3 **Press and hold the main unit's DIMMER and TUNER PRESET CH – at the same time for at least 3 seconds.**

4 **Remove your fingers from the two buttons when “Network Reset...” appears on the display.**

5 **“Completed” is shown in the display when reset is complete.**

- Before returning the settings to the default settings, use the “Save & Load” function from the menu to save and restore the details of various settings configured on the unit. (☞ p. 252)
- You can also reset the network settings to the factory defaults using “Reset” - “Network Settings” in the menu. (☞ p. 253)

NOTE

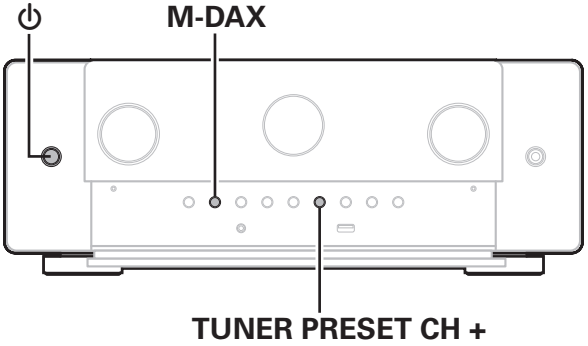
- Do not turn the power off until reset is complete.

Restoring the firmware to the factory defaults

When the unit or the network functions do not work properly, operation may be improved by restoring the firmware to the factory defaults.

Do this when the unit still does not work properly even after trying the steps for “Resetting factory settings” or “Resetting network settings”. (☞ p. 280, 281)

After the firmware is restored, various settings are reset to the default settings. Configure the network settings and update the firmware again.



1 **Press ⏻ while simultaneously pressing TUNER PRESET CH + and M-DAX.**

2 **When “Restoring FW...” appears on the display, release the buttons.**

When the firmware restore is complete, “Completed” appears on the display for about 5 seconds, and the unit automatically restarts.

- This operation takes time because it requires reconnecting to the network, restoring and updating the firmware.
- If this operation does not improve the problem, contact our customer service center.

NOTE

- Do not turn off the power until the firmware restore is complete.

About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system.

This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

  An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

  Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **x.v.Color**

  This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

  “x.v.Color” is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

  This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K / 8K**

  This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) and 8K (7680 x 4320 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

  It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

  The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

  Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

- **Auto Lip Sync**
  This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.
  Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.
- **HDMI Pass Through**
  Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.
- **HDMI Control**
  If you connect the unit and an HDMI Control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI Control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.
  - Power off link
    This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.
  - Audio output destination switching
    From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV amplifier.
  - Volume adjustment
    You can adjust this unit's volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.
  - Input source switching
    You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.
    When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.
- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**
  This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI Control function.
  If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.
  In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.
- **eARC (Enhanced Audio Return Channel)**
  The eARC function is an extension of the conventional ARC function. It utilizes dedicated eARC function control to play back television audio from this unit without passing through HDMI control. Furthermore, the eARC function can transmit multichannel linear PCM, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS-HD, DTS:X and other audio formats not compatible with conventional ARC. Connecting to an eARC function-compatible television also enables enjoyment of higher-quality surround playback of the audio content played from your television.

- **ALLM (Auto Low Latency Mode)**
  This unit automatically switches to low latency mode depending on playback contents when using a combination of television and game console compatible with the ALLM function.
- **VRR (Variable Refresh Rate):**
  VRR reduces or eliminates lag, stutter and frame tearing for more fluid and better detailed gameplay.
- **QFT (Quick Frame Transport):**
  QFT reduces latency for smoother no-lag gaming, and real-time interactive virtual reality.
- **FRL (Fixed Rate Link):**
  FRL (Fixed Rate Link) is transmission technology that is required to provide higher resolutions such as ultra high speed bandwidths of 4K 60Hz or higher.

NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.

■ Supported audio formats

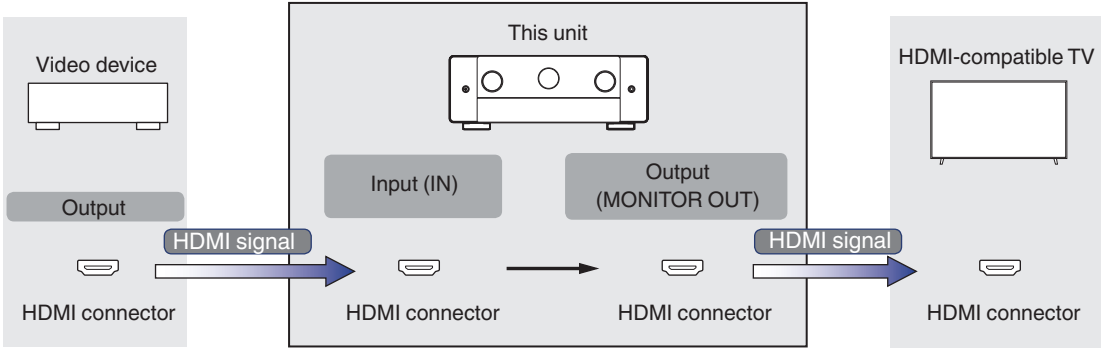
2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS:X / DTS-HD / MPEG-H
DSD	2-channel – 5.1-channel, 2.8 MHz

■ Supported video signals

- 480i
- 576i
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080p 120/100/60/50/24Hz
- 8K 60/50/30/25/24Hz
- 480p
- 576p
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 4K 120/100/60/50/30/25/24Hz

Copyright protection system
In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP. • If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.

Relationship between video signals and monitor output



NOTE

- Only HDMI connections are available for the video input/output of this unit.

When “HDMI Upscaler” in the menu is set to “Auto”, this unit upscales the input HDMI video signal and then outputs it to the TV. (☞ p. 185)

Input signal \ Output signal		HDMI											
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p 30/25/24Hz	1080p 60/50Hz	1080p 120/100Hz	4K 30/25/24Hz	4K 60/50Hz	4K 120/100Hz	8K 30/25/24Hz	8K 60/50Hz
HDMI	480i/576i	✓											
	480p/576p		✓										
	720p			✓									
	1080i				✓								
	1080p 30/25/24Hz					✓			✓			✓	
	1080p 60/50Hz						✓			✓			✓
	1080p 120/100Hz							✓					
	4K 30/25/24Hz								✓			✓	
	4K 60/50Hz									✓			✓
	4K 120/100Hz										✓		
	8K 30/25/24Hz											✓	
	8K 60/50Hz												✓

Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

■ Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC∗1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a
FLAC	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless∗2	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

∗1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

∗2 The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (**http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0**).

■ Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item \ Media	USB memory device
Number of folder directory levels *1	8 levels
Number of folders	500
Number of files*2	5000

*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

■ About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms

Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC/Apple Lossless/DSD) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.
  For playing mentioned audio formats via a network a server software, for example Twonky Media Server or jRiver Media Server, needs to be installed on your computer or NAS for full support. There are other server software available too. Please check supported formats.

■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Channel	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	2-channel	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a
FLAC	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.flac
Apple Lossless*2	44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	2-channel	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8/5.6 MHz	2-channel	–	.dsf/.dff

∗1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

∗2 The Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC) decoder is distributed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (**http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0**).

Playing back Internet Radio

■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 - 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a

Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT32, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, M-DAX and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.

- "Surround Parameter" settings are stored for each sound mode.

Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

Sound modes and channel output

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of “Speaker Configuration”. (☞ p. 215)

Sound mode	Channel output															
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Center Height	Top Surround	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	○															◎∗4
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎∗5	◎
DSD Direct (2-channel)	○															◎∗4
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎													◎
Stereo	○															◎
Dolby Atmos	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎				◎	◎	◎	◎
Dolby TrueHD	○	◎	◎	◎∗5												◎
Dolby Digital Plus	○	◎	◎	◎∗5												◎
Dolby Digital	○	◎	◎													◎
Dolby Surround ∗1	○	◎	◎	◎∗6	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎				◎	◎	◎	◎
IMAX DTS:X	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
IMAX DTS	○	◎	◎∗7	◎∗7												◎
DTS:X	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS-HD	○	◎	◎	◎∗5												◎
DTS Surround	○	◎	◎	◎												◎
DTS Neural:X ∗2	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Virtual:X ∗3	○	◎	◎	◎												◎
Auro-3D	○	◎	◎	◎	◎				◎∗8	◎	◎	◎	◎∗9	◎∗9	◎∗9	◎
Auro-2D Surround	○	◎	◎	◎												◎
Multi Ch In	○	◎	◎	◎∗5												◎
MPEG-H	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Multi Ch Stereo	○	◎	◎	◎	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎∗10	◎

∗1 - ∗10: “Sound modes and channel output” (☞ p. 294)

∗1 The applicable sound mode includes “Dolby Surround” and sound modes that have “+Dolby Surround” in the sound mode name.
∗2 The applicable sound mode includes “DTS Neural:X” and sound modes that have “+Neural:X” in the sound mode name.
∗3 The applicable sound mode includes “DTS Virtual:X” and sound modes that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
∗4 Audio is output when “Bass” - “Subwoofer Output” in the menu is set to “LFE + Main”. (☞ p. 226)
∗5 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
∗6 Audio is not output when the “Surround Parameter” - “Speaker Virtualizer” in the menu is set to “On” and “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” in the menu is set to “1 spkr”. (☞ p. 167, 219)
∗7 When “Speaker Configuration” - “Surround Back” is set to “2 spkrs”, “Speaker Configuration” - “Center” is set to “Large” or “Small”, and sound mode is set to “IMAX DTS”, surround audio is output from the surround back speaker. Audio is not output from the surround speaker. (☞ p. 219)
∗8 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.
∗9 For the best Auro-3D experience Front Height and Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
∗10 Audio is output from the speakers specified in the “Surround Parameter” - “Speaker Select” settings. (☞ p. 171)

Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surround Parameter											
	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management ∗2	Dynamic Compression ∗3	Dialog Control ∗4	Low Frequency Effects ∗5	Speaker Select ∗6	Center Spread	Speaker Virtualizer ∗7	DTS Neural:X	IMAX	IMAX Audio Settings	High Pass Filter ∗8
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) ∗1		○	○									
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) ∗1		○	○	○	○							
DSD Direct (2-channel)												
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)												
Stereo		○	○	○	○							
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○		○			○				
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○		○							
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○		○							
Dolby Digital	○	○	○		○							
Dolby Surround	○	○	○				○	○				
IMAX DTS:X	○		○	○	○				○	○	○	○
IMAX DTS	○		○		○					○	○	○
DTS:X	○		○	○	○				○	○		
DTS-HD	○		○		○					○		
DTS Surround	○		○		○					○		
DTS Neural:X	○	○	○									
DTS Virtual:X	○		○									
Auro-3D	○				○							
Auro-2D Surround	○				○							
Multi Ch In	○				○							
MPEG-H	○				○							
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○	○	○	○						

∗1 - ∗8 : “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 297)

Sound mode	Surround Parameter						Dialog Enhancer	Tone ∗9	Subwoofer Level Adjust ∗10	Audyssey				M-DAX ∗15
	Low Pass Filter ∗8	Subwoofer Output ∗8	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength	Auro-3D Mode	Subwoofer				MultEQ® XT32 ∗11∗12	Dynamic EQ ∗13∗14	Dynamic Volume ∗13∗14	Audyssey LFC™ ∗13∗14	
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) ∗1						○∗16			○∗16					
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) ∗1									○					
DSD Direct (2-channel)						○∗16			○∗16					
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)						○		○	○					
Stereo						○∗17	○	○	○∗17	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Atmos							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby TrueHD							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital Plus							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Surround							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
IMAX DTS:X	○	○					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
IMAX DTS	○	○					○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS:X							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS-HD							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Surround							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Neural:X							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS Virtual:X							○	○	○	○				○
Auro-3D			○∗18	○∗18	○∗19		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Multi Ch In							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
MPEG-H							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Multi Ch Stereo							○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

∗1, ∗8 - ∗19: “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 297)

∗1 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.
∗2 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is played.
∗3 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X, DTS-HD or DTS signal is played.
∗4 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.
∗5 This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
∗6 This item can be selected when Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are used.
∗7 This item can be set when any Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are not used, or Surround speakers are not used.
∗8 This item can be selected when “Surround Parameter” - “IMAX Audio Settings” in the menu is set to “Manual”. (☞ p. 168)
∗9 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 176)
∗10 This item cannot be set when “Speaker Configuration” - “Subwoofer” in the menu is set to “None”. (☞ p. 215)
∗11 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.
∗12 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
∗13 This item cannot be set when sound mode is “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
∗14 This item cannot be set when “MultEQ® XT32” in the menu is set to “Off”. (☞ p. 175)
∗15 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
∗16 This setting is available when “Bass” - “Subwoofer Output” in the menu is set to “LFE + Main”. (☞ p. 226)
∗17 This item can be set when “Speaker Configuration” - “Front” is set to “Small” or “Bass” - “Subwoofer Output” is set to “LFE + Main”. (☞ p. 215, 226)
∗18 This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.
∗19 This can be set if the input signal contains an Auro-3D signal.

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

● This indicates the default sound mode.
○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal							Multi-channel signal												
		Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital	DTS-HD	DTS	Analog / PCM	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	IMAX DTS:X	IMAX DTS	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS	Auro-3D	PCM multi-channel	MPEG-H	DSD (Super Audio CD)
Direct																					
Direct		○	○	○	○	○	○∗2		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DSD Direct								○													○
Pure Direct																					
Pure Direct		○	○	○	○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
DSD Pure Direct								○													○
Stereo																					
Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Surround																					
Dolby Atmos	∗1								●												
Dolby TrueHD		○							○∗3	○								○∗4			
Dolby Digital Plus			○						○∗5		○										
Dolby Digital				○								○									
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Dolby Surround										●	●	●						○∗4			
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Neural:X										○	○	○						○∗4			
Dolby Surround		●	●	●	○	○	○	○													

∗1 - ∗5: “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 300)

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal							Multi-channel signal												
		Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital	DTS-HD	DTS	Analog / PCM	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	IMAX DTS:X	IMAX DTS	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS	Auro-3D	PCM multi-channel	MPEG-H	DSD (Super Audio CD)
DTS Surround																					
IMAX DTS:X													●∗6								
IMAX DTS														○∗6							
DTS:X													○∗7		●						
DTS-HD					○									○∗7		○		○∗8			
DTS Surround						○								○∗7			○				
IMAX DTS + Neural:X														●∗6							
IMAX DTS / IMAX DTS:X + Virtual:X													○∗6	○∗6							
DTS (-HD) + Dolby Surround														○		○	○	○∗8			
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X														○∗7		●∗9	●∗9	○∗8			
DTS (-HD) / DTS:X + Virtual:X													○∗7	○∗7	○∗10	○	○	○∗8			
DTS Neural:X		○	○	○	●∗10	●∗10	○	○													
DTS Virtual:X					○	○	○	○													
Auro-3D																					
Auro-3D	∗11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○	○	○		○		○	○	○	○		○
Auro-2D Surround	∗11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○	○	○		○		○	○	○	○		○
Multi Ch In																					
Multi Ch In / Multi Ch In 7.1																		○∗12	●∗13		●
Multi In + Dolby Surround																			○		○
Multi In + Neural:X																			○		○
Multi In + Virtual:X																			○		○
MPEG-H																					
MPEG-H																				●	
Original sound mode																					
Multi Ch Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

∗6 - ∗13 : “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 300)

∗1 This item can be selected when using any of the Surround Back, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, Rear Height, Front Dolby, Surround Dolby or Back Dolby speaker. It can also be selected when the “Surround Parameter” - “Speaker Virtualizer” setting is turned “On”.
∗2 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is “Direct”.
∗3 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.
∗4 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Dolby TrueHD.
∗5 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.
∗6 Selectable when “Surround Parameter” - “IMAX” is set to “Auto” in the menu. (☞ p. 167)
∗7 Selectable when “Surround Parameter” - “IMAX” is set to “Off”. (Selectable sound modes vary depending on the type of input signal). (☞ p. 167)
∗8 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains DTS-HD.
∗9 This item cannot be selected when a DTS(-HD) format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
∗10 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
∗11 This item cannot be selected if the sampling frequency of the input signal is 32 kHz.
∗12 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Multi Channel PCM.
∗13 Multi ch In 7.1 can be selected only when the input signals include surround back signals and surround back speakers are being used.

Explanation of terms

■ Audyssey

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT32 calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

■ Auro-3D

Auro-3D®

The Auro-3D® technology suite is a groundbreaking new audio technology that combines height-based listening formats with powerful creative tools to deliver an unrivaled three-dimensional sound experience. Auro-3D® is the general format name for Sound in 3D and its related speaker lay-outs.

Auro-Matic®

Auro-Matic® up-mixing technology software is a unique creative tool that transforms legacy Mono, Stereo and Surround content into a natural 3D or 2D listening experience.

■ Dolby

Dolby Atmos

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.

Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos Enabled AV receiver via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV receiver and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels (“FL”, “FR” and “C”), 2 surround channels (“SL” and “SR”) and the “LFE” channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a “three-dimensional” feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby Surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.

Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers)

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby Surround playback.

Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.

Speaker Virtualizer

Dolby Atmos height virtualization is a digital signal processing solution that leverages Dolby's deep understanding of human audio perception to create the sensation of overhead sound from the listener-level speakers. This signal processing applies height-cue filters to overhead audio components contained within the audio signal before they are mixed into the listener-level speakers.
These filters simulate the natural spectral cues imparted by our ears to sounds that originate from overhead.
For stereo and 3.1-channel speaker configuration, Dolby Atmos height virtualization is combined with surround virtualization to create an enveloping 360-degree audio minus the speakers that would ordinarily be employed behind or to the side of the listener.

■ DTS

Dialog Control

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world's finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

DTS Digital Surround

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS Express

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.

This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS:X

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.

DTS Neural:X

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.

DTS Virtual:X

DTS Virtual:X allows you to enjoy multi-dimensional sound regardless of room size, layout, or speaker configuration.

IMAX®

IMAX® is well admired around the world for a premium large format movie experience. IMAX delivers the most advanced movie projection technology combined with rich, deep sound.

■ Audio

Apple Lossless Audio Codec

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.

The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the “MPEG-1” video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include “MPEG-1 Video”, “MPEG-2 Video”, “MPEG-4 Visual”, “MPEG-4 AVC”. Audio standards include “MPEG-1 Audio”, “MPEG-2 Audio”, “MPEG-4 AAC”.

MPEG-H

MPEG-H 3D Audio is a new audio technology to truly immerse and envelop listeners in sound from all directions, which opens an entire next level of sound going beyond stereo and surround. With sound coming from above, a third dimension is added to the audio experience making it much more realistic and natural.
Thanks to its unique personalization features, MPEG-H 3D Audio also offers users a great flexibility to actively engage with the content and adapt it to their own preferences.
MPEG-H 3D Audio enables true object based sound and is also the basis of Sony’s 360 Reality Audio for immersive music streaming services. 360 Reality Audio makes it possible for artists and creators to produce music by mapping sound sources such as vocals, chorus and instruments with positional information and placing them within a spherical space.

WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

Sampling frequency

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms).

Greater power can be obtained when this value is smaller.

Dialogue normalization function

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

Dynamic range

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

Downmix

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system’s configuration.

■ Video

Progressive (sequential scanning)

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.

■ Network

AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

WEP Key (network key)

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.

Wi-Fi®

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.

WPA/WPA2-Personal

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on “SSID (network names)”. For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the “SSID” and the WEP key match. This is suitable for constructing a simplified network.

■ Others

HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.
When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

Protection circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or over temperature for any reason.

Trademark information

Works with Apple AirPlay

Apple, AirPlay, iPad, iPad Air, iPad Pro and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

The trademark “iPhone” is used in Japan with a license from Aiphone K.K.

Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT32 DYNAMIC VOLUME

AUDYSSEY LFC

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.

Auro-3D® AUDIO

Manufactured under license from Auro Technologies.

Auro-3D® and the related symbols are registered trademarks of Auro Technologies. All materials contained in this work are protected by copyright law and may not be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, displayed, published or broadcast without the prior written permission of Auro Technologies NV or in case of third party materials, the owner of that content. You may not alter or remove any trademark, copyright or other notice from copies of the content.

Auro Technologies: mail info@auro-technologies.com, phone +32-(0)-14314343, fax +32-(0)-14321224, **www.auro-technologies.com**

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Audio, Dolby Vision, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.
Confidential unpublished works. Copyright © 1992-2022 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

For DTS patents, see **http://patents.dts.com**. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, DTS:X, and the DTS:X logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and other countries. © 2021 DTS, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC in the United States and other countries.

HDR10+™ logo is a trademark of HDR10+ Technologies, LLC.

IMAX ENHANCED IMAX dts

Manufactured under license from IMAX Corporation. IMAX® is a registered trademark of IMAX Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. All Rights Reserved. For DTS patents, see **http://patents.dts.com**. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Wi Fi CERTIFIED

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

MPEG-H AUDIO

The MPEG-H TV Audio system logo is a trademark of Fraunhofer IIS and is registered in Germany and other countries.

Download on the App Store

App Store® is registered in the U.S. and other countries.

GET IT ON Google Play

Google Play and the Google Play logo are trademarks of Google LLC.

Specifications

■ Audio section

- **Power amplifier**

Rated output:

Front:
110 W + 110 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
150 W + 150 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)
Center:
110 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
150 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)
Surround:
110 W + 110 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
150 W + 150 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)
Surround back / Height1 / Height2:
110 W + 110 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)
150 W + 150 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Output connectors:

4 – 16 Ω/ohms

- **Analog**

Input sensitivity:	200 mV
Frequency response:	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (Direct mode)
S/N:	100 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)
Distortion:	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (Direct mode)
Rated output:	1.2 V

- **Digital**

D/A output:	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback)
	Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB)
	S/N ratio — 102 dB
	Dynamic range — 100 dB
Digital input:	Format — Digital audio interface

- **Phono equalizer**

Input sensitivity:	2.5 mV
RIAA deviation:	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
S/N:	74 dB (IHF-A)
Distortion factor:	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)

■ Tuner section

	[FM]	[AM]
	(Note: µV at 75 Ω/ohms, 0 dBf = 1 x 10^{-15} W)	
Reception frequency range:	87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz	520 kHz – 1710 kHz
Effective sensitivity:	1.2 µV (12.8 dBf)	18 µV
50 dB sensitivity:	MONO — 2.8 µV (20.2 dBf)	
S/N ratio:	MONO — 70 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode) STEREO — 67 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)	
Distortion:	MONO — 0.7 % (1 kHz) STEREO — 1.0 % (1 kHz)	

■ Wireless LAN section

Network type (wireless LAN standard):	Conforming to IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n/ac (Wi-Fi® compliant) *1
Security:	WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES) WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)
	2.4 GHz, 5 GHz

*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

■ Bluetooth section

Communications system:	Bluetooth Specification Version 4.2
Transmission power:	Bluetooth Specification Power Class 1
Maximum communication range:	Approx. 98.4 ft/30 m in line of sight *2
Used frequency range:	2.4 GHz
Modulation scheme:	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
Supported profiles:	Receiver function A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2 AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.5 Transmitter function A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2
Corresponding codec:	SBC
Transmission range (A2DP):	20 Hz – 20,000 Hz

∗2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.

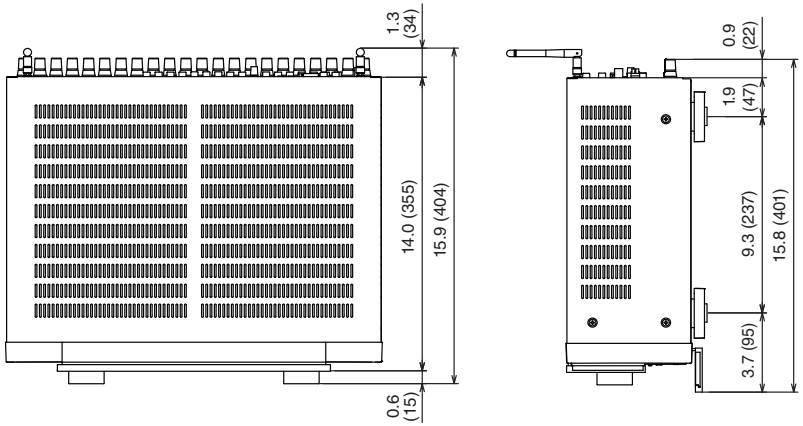
■ General

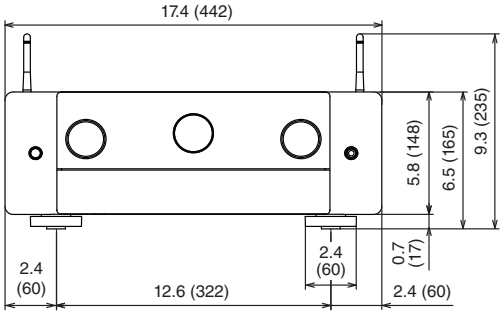
Operating temperature:	41 °F - 95 °F (5 °C - 35 °C)
Power supply:	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
Power consumption:	680 W
Power consumption in standby mode:	0.2 W *
Power consumption in CEC standby mode:	0.5 W

∗ When “Network Control” in the menu is set to “Off In Standby” and “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “Off”.

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

■ **Dimensions** (Unit : in. (mm))





■ **Weight: 29.8 lb (13.5 kg)**

Index

☞ Numerics

11.1-channel 50
3D 283
4K/8K 283
5.1-channel 47
7.1-channel 48
9.1-channel 49

☞ A

AirPlay 113
All Zone Stereo 125
Audio formats 285, 289, 291, 292
Audio settings 158, 164
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® 301
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® 301
Audyssey LFC™ 301
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 301
Audyssey settings 175, 196
Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ 195
Audyssey® Setup 194
Auto sound mode 130
Auto Standby 242

☞ B

Bi-amp 53
Bluetooth device 84
Blu-ray Disc player 63, 78

☞ C

Cable TV 61

☞ D

Direct sound mode 135
Display 22
Dolby Atmos 302
Dolby sound mode 131, 303
DTS sound mode 132, 304
DVD player 63, 78

☞ E

ECO Mode 239
External control device 71

☞ F

Firmware Update 248
FM/AM antenna 67, 91
Front panel 19

☞ G

Game console 64
General settings 161, 239

☞ H

HDCP 286
HDMI Control 141, 182
HEOS Account 105, 238
HEOS Favorites 118

☞ I

Input Assign 190
Input settings 159, 190
Input source 77
Internet Radio 98

☞ L

Listening position 194

☞ M

M-DAX 173
Menu map 158
Muting 78

☞ N

NAS 100
Network settings 230

☞ O

Original sound mode 134

☞ P

Pairing 84, 85
PC 100
PCM multi-channel sound mode 134
Protection circuit 310
Pure direct 130

☞ Q

Queue 80, 101, 108

☞ R

Rear panel 24
Remote control unit 28
Resetting factory settings 280
Resetting network settings 281

☞ S

Satellite tuner 61
Set-top box 61
Setup Assistant 162
Sleep timer 142
Smart select 144
Sound mode 128
Speaker connection 38
Speaker settings 159, 194
Spotify 116
Stereo sound mode 135

☞ T

Tips 257
Troubleshooting 259
TV 58, 59

☞ U

USB memory device 66, 79

☞ V

Video Select 124
Video settings 158, 180
Volume 78, 120

☞ W

Web control 151
Wi-Fi settings 231
Wired LAN 69, 230
Wireless LAN 70, 231

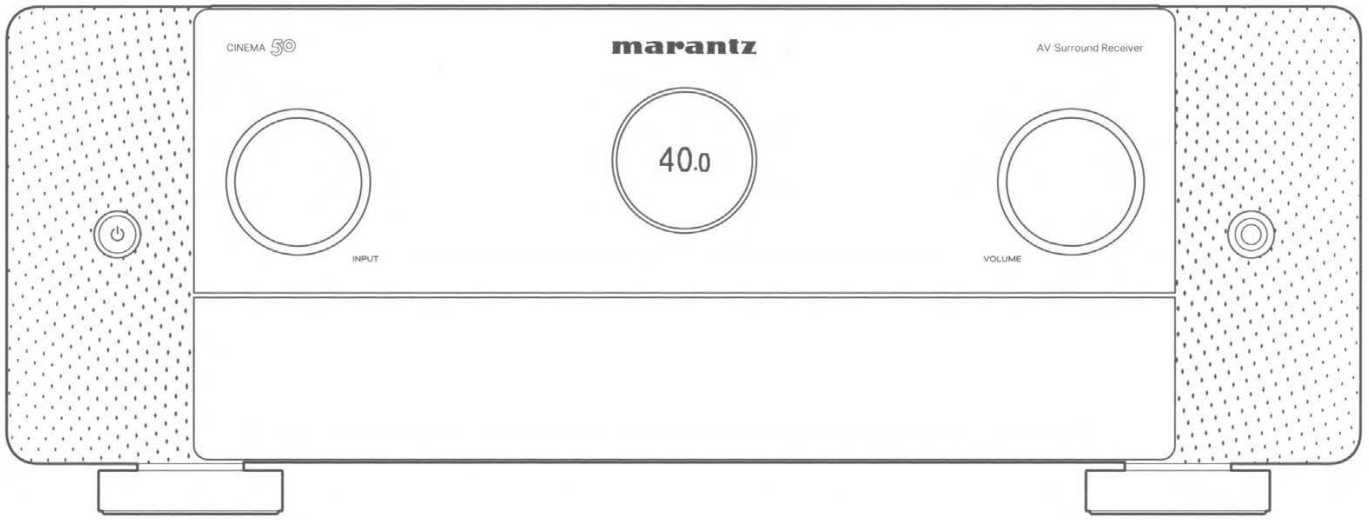
☞ Z

ZONE2 ..... 55, 154

marantz®

3520 10895 00AMA
©2022 Sound United. All Rights Reserved.

marantz®



CINEMA 50 | AV Surround Receiver

QUICK START GUIDE

Trademark information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

COMPATIBLE WITH

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Audio, Dolby Vision, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Confidential unpublished works. Copyright © 1992-2022 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

For DTS patents, see **http://patents.dts.com.** Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, DTS:X, and the DTS:X logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and other countries. © 2021 DTS, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC in the United States and other countries.

App Store® is registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Google Play and the Google Play logo are trademarks of Google LLC.

Welcome

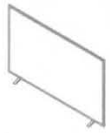
Thank you for choosing a Marantz AVR.
Use the Setup Assistant function to help configure the settings for this unit when you first set it up.
Follow the guidance displayed on the TV screen connected to this unit to configure the settings.
This manual describes the procedure up until starting the Setup Assistant.

Please do not return this product to the store.
If you need help...

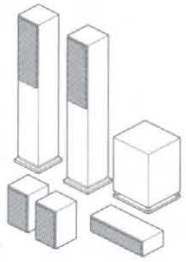
Scan the QR code or visit **support.marantz.com/** for setup help, technical support, warranty assistance, or customer support contact information.

Before you begin

Required for setup

TV 

HDMI® cable

Speakers 

Speaker cables

Subwoofer cable

Optional

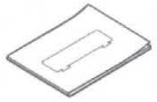
LAN cable

or

Wi-Fi® router

- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K, ARC and eARC functions, use a "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" that displays the HDMI logo.
- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with 8K and 4K 120Hz video, use a certified "Ultra High Speed HDMI cable". If you use a different HDMI cable, the video may not display or other problems may occur.

What's in the box

Quick start guide 

Safety instructions

Notes on radio

Warranty
(for USA and Canada)

Cable labels

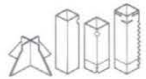
AVR

Power cord

FM indoor antenna

AM loop antenna

Sound calibration
microphone

Sound calibration
microphone stand 

Remote control
(RC049SR)

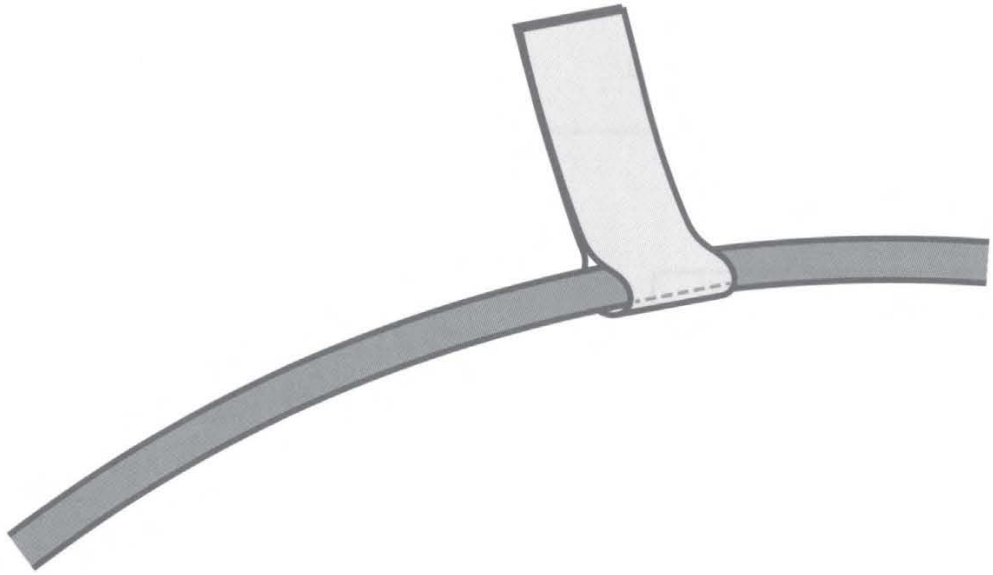
2× R03/AAA batteries

External antennas for
Bluetooth®/wireless
connectivity

- The included sound calibration microphone stand is convenient for performing speaker calibration. Using your own tripod or the supplied sound calibration microphone stand enables settings to be automatically configured to the optimum listening environment, providing exceptionally high performance.

Attach the included cable labels

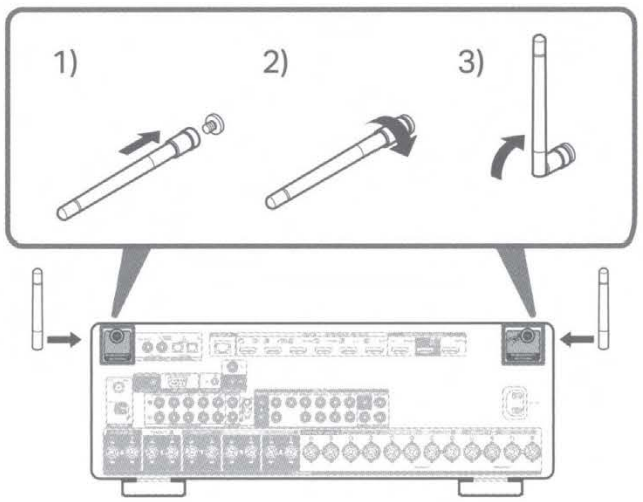
The supplied cable labels include labels for the speaker and HDMI cables.
Attach a cable label to each cable that matches the speakers and HDMI devices being connected, as shown below.
This makes it easy to identify and properly connect the cables between your components.



Setup

1 Connect the antennas

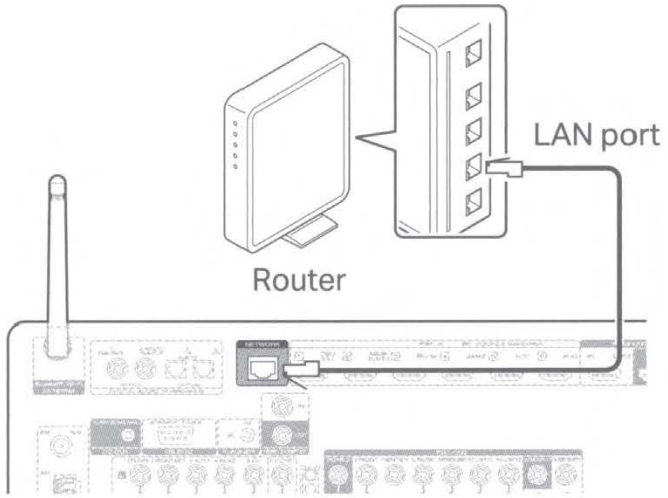
1) Place the antenna evenly over the antenna terminal located at the upper left or right corner of the rear panel.
2) Turn the antenna clockwise until it is fully connected. Do not over tighten.
3) Rotate the antenna upwards for the best possible reception.



- The antennas are required for both Bluetooth and Wi-Fi functions.

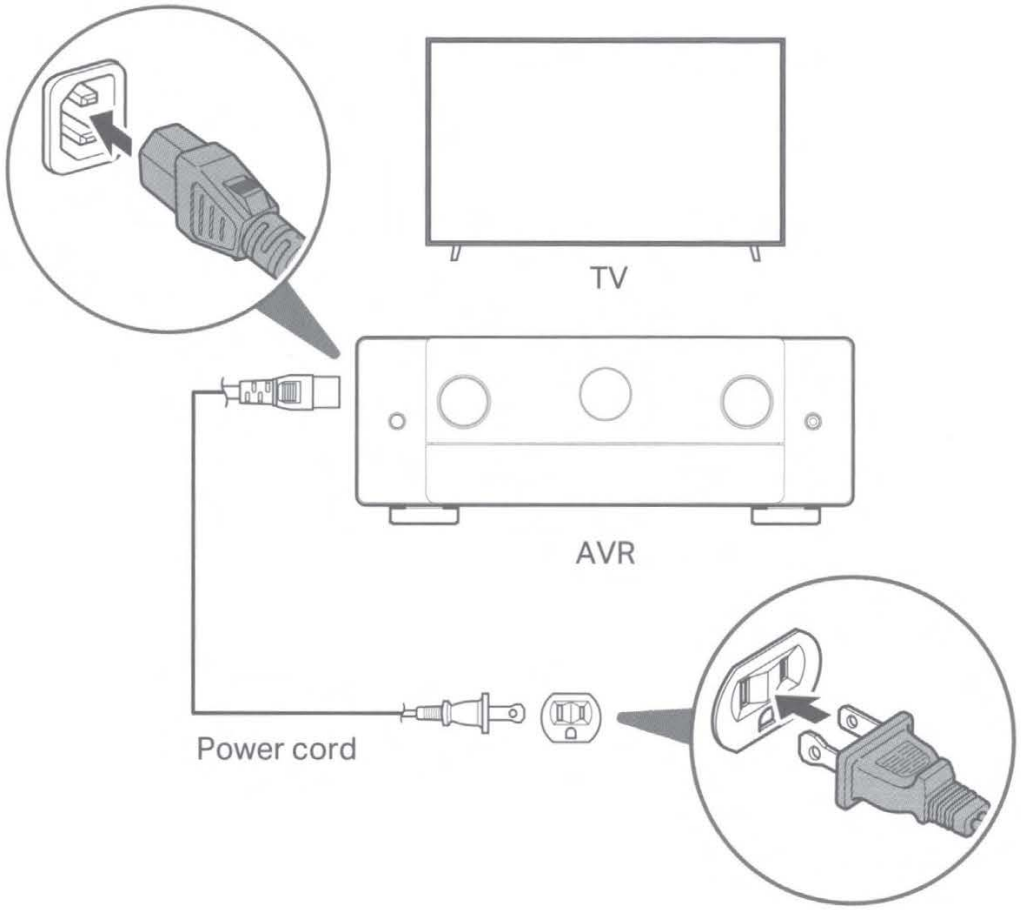
Optional

If you are connecting the AVR to a wired network, connect an Ethernet cable (not included) between the AVR and your router. Do not connect the Ethernet cable if you are connecting the AVR to a wireless network.

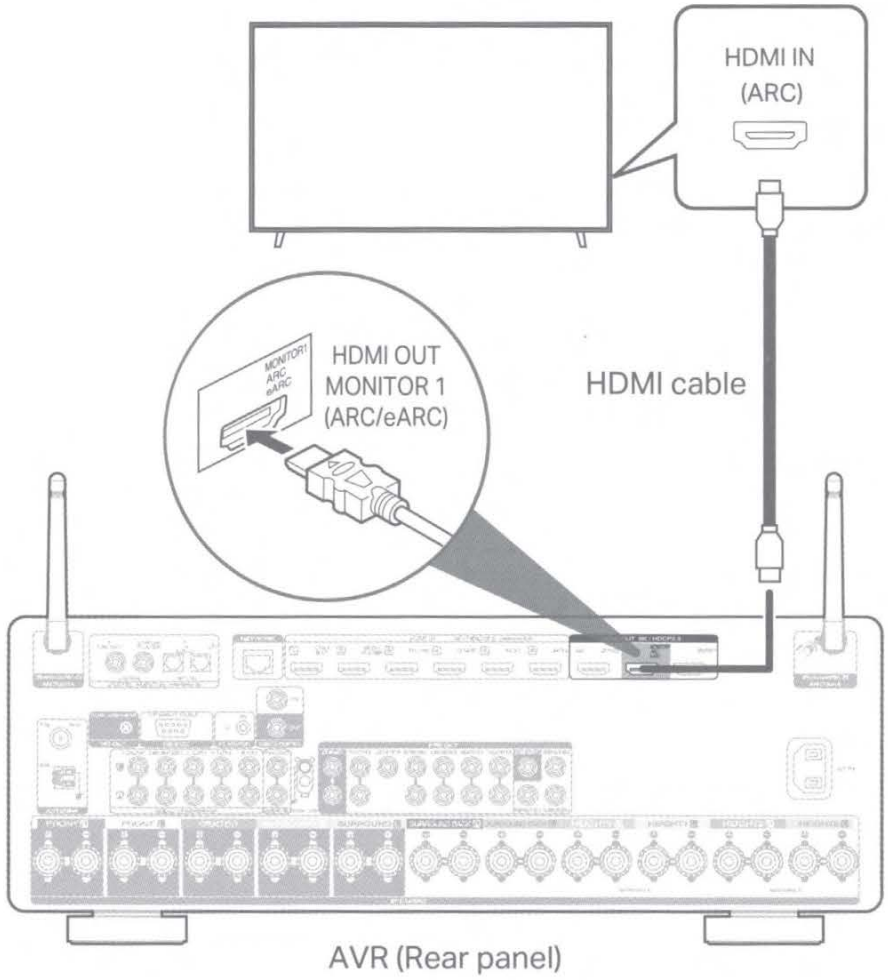


2 Connect the power cord

Place the AVR near your TV and connect the power cord.



3 Connect the AVR to your TV



AVR (Rear panel)

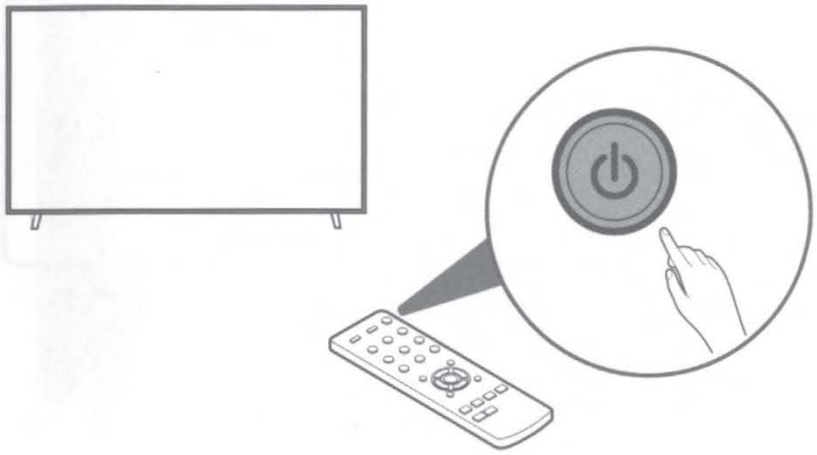
Using a high quality HDMI cable*, connect one end to the HDMI port labeled "eARC" or "ARC" on your TV. Connect the other end to the HDMI OUT MONITOR 1 port on your AVR.

What is ARC and eARC?

Audio Return Channel or "ARC" sends audio back to the AVR using the same HDMI cable that sends video from your AVR to your TV. This allows your AVR to process the sound from your TV's built-in tuner and apps. TVs with an Enhanced Audio Return Channel or "eARC" port provide additional support for high bitrate multichannel audio (Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD and DTS:X). Please refer to your TV owner's manual for details about eARC support for your particular model.

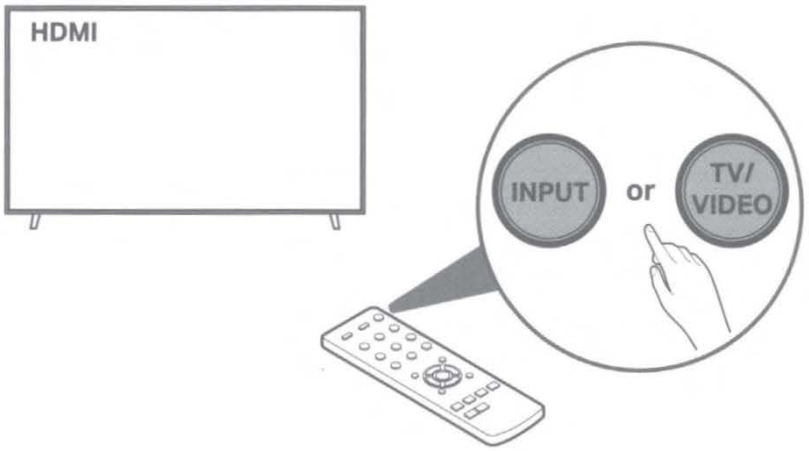
* For 4K TVs, we recommend using an HDMI cable labeled "High Speed" and "with Ethernet" .
* For 8K TVs, we recommend using an HDMI cable labeled "Ultra High Speed".

4 Turn on the TV



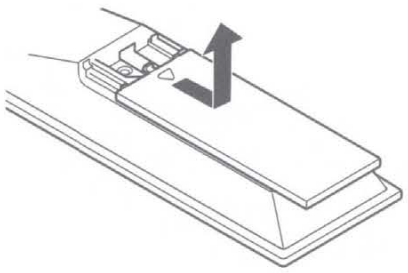
TV remote control

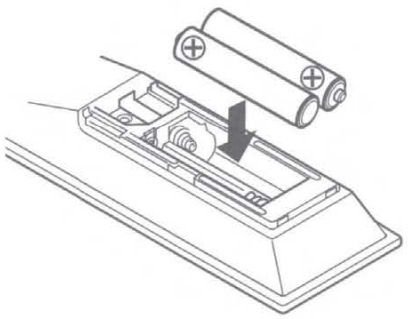
5 Select the appropriate HDMI input on your TV



TV remote control

6 Install batteries in the AVR remote control

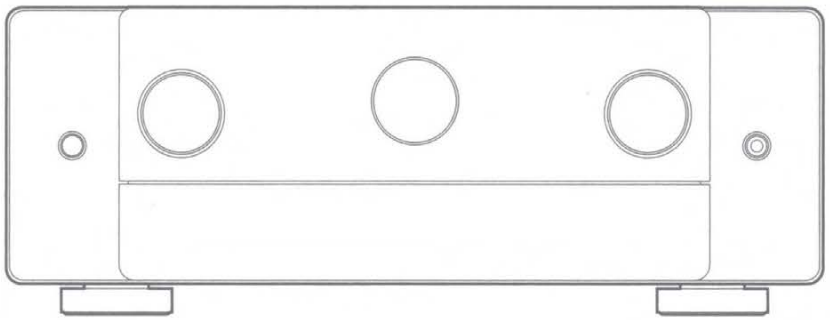


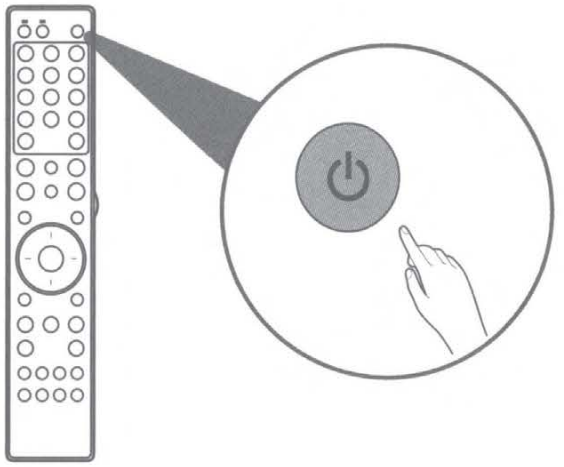


- Batteries can be taken out in reversed order.

7 Turn on the AVR

- Press ⏻ on the remote control.





8 Verify the connection

- Verify that you can see this screen on your TV.

If this screen is not displayed, please go back and retry the steps again in the recommended sequence.

- In case the unit was already setup back in time the Setup Assistant won't start automatically and you only see the Marantz logo on screen. In such case you can access the Setup Assistant by pressing SETUP on the remote control and selecting Setup Assistant from the menu.

9 Follow the on-screen Setup Assistant

The TV is now connected to the AVR.
The Setup Assistant will walk you through connecting and configuring your speakers and components to your Marantz AVR. Use the remote control and follow the instructions on the TV screen to complete the AVR settings using the Setup Assistant.

Firmware update

If you see this screen after completing Setup Assistant, select Update Now to make sure your new AVR is up to date with the latest firmware and features.

Download the mobile apps

Download both the "HEOS" app and the "Marantz AVR Remote" app for the full home entertainment experience. The HEOS app is required to access online music through your AVR.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

HEOS app

The HEOS app allows you to explore, browse, and play music from many online streaming services or from your own music library.

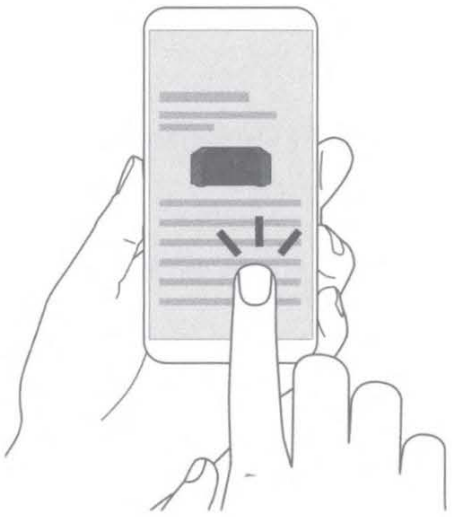
Marantz AVR Remote

Control your new AVR with the latest Marantz AVR Remote app.

Owner's manual

Refer to the online manual for other functions, information, and operation procedure details.
manuals.marantz.com/CINEMA50/NA/EN/

Online manual



For more information, visit **www.marantz.com**

marantz®

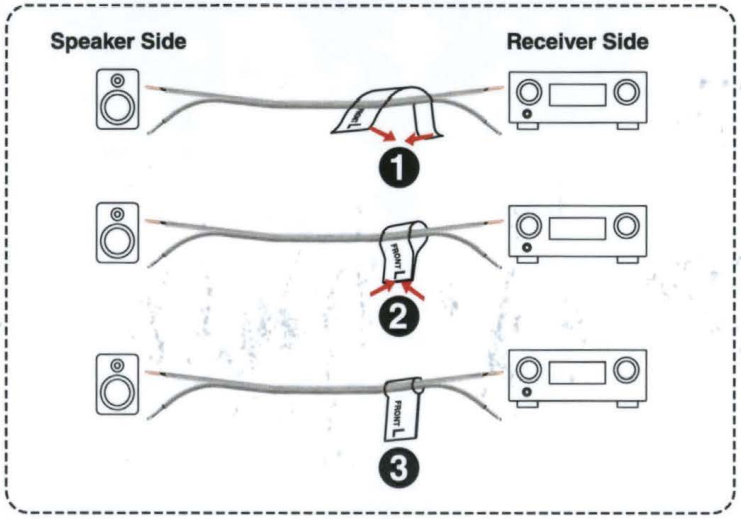
Printed in Vietnam 5411 12017 00AM
© 2022 Sound United. All Rights Reserved.
VQX1A2360Z

7.2 SURROUND SPEAKERS

5.1 SURROUND SPEAKERS

FRONT L	FRONT L	CENTER	CENTER	FRONT R	FRONT R
SURROUND L	SURROUND L	SUBWOOFER 1	SUBWOOFER 1	SURROUND R	SURROUND R
SURROUND BACK L	SURROUND BACK L	SUBWOOFER 2	SUBWOOFER 2	SURROUND BACK R	SURROUND BACK R

FRONT HEIGHT L	FRONT HEIGHT L	SUBWOOFER 3	SUBWOOFER 3	FRONT HEIGHT R	FRONT HEIGHT R
ZONE2 L	ZONE2 L	SUBWOOFER 4	SUBWOOFER 4	ZONE2 R	ZONE2 R

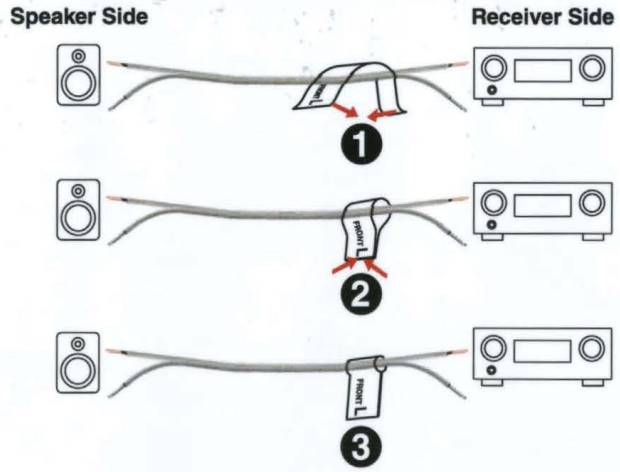


OPTIONAL

CQB1A2064Z

TOP FRONT L	TOP FRONT L
TOP MIDDLE L	TOP MIDDLE L
TOP REAR L	TOP REAR L
SURROUND HEIGHT L	SURROUND HEIGHT L
REAR HEIGHT L	REAR HEIGHT L
FRONT DOLBY L	FRONT DOLBY L
SURROUND DOLBY L	SURROUND DOLBY L
BACK DOLBY L	BACK DOLBY L

TOP SURROUND	TOP SURROUND
CENTER HEIGHT	CENTER HEIGHT



NETWORK	NETWORK

ETHERNET

TOP FRONT R	TOP FRONT R
TOP MIDDLE R	TOP MIDDLE R
TOP REAR R	TOP REAR R
SURROUND HEIGHT R	SURROUND HEIGHT R
REAR HEIGHT R	REAR HEIGHT R
FRONT DOLBY R	FRONT DOLBY R
SURROUND DOLBY R	SURROUND DOLBY R
BACK DOLBY R	BACK DOLBY R

OPTIONAL

CBL / SAT	CBL / SAT
Blu-ray	Blu-ray
AUX1	AUX1

MONITOR 1	MONITOR 1
MONITOR 2	MONITOR 2

MEDIA PLAYER	MEDIA PLAYER
GAME	GAME
AUX2	AUX2

HDMI

CQB1A2064Z

marantz

SR5015

Marantz SR5015 7.2ch 8K AV receiver with HEOS® Built-in and Voice Control

Drive exquisitely detailed home cinema with the Marantz SR5015 7.2 channel 8K UHD AV receiver. Delight in the most musical sound for any source — from home theater, to vinyl, to digital streaming. Totally immerse yourself in movies and TV with elevated surround sound formatting from Dolby Atmos® and DTS:X®. Enjoy seamless voice control from the leading voice agents, multi-room connectivity and the latest in HDMI technology.

- Performance, power and connectivity to suit your audio preferences: 7.2 channel discrete power amplifier, 100W per channel (8 Ohm, 20Hz-20kHz, THD: 0.08%, 2ch. drive.
- 8K/60Hz and select 4K/120Hz* pass-through support for every entertainment need: With the latest technology in HDMI support, enjoy 8K quality video from your 8K source devices. 8K upscaling is available on all 6 HDMI ports.
- Support for the most advanced object-based audio formats: Dolby Atmos®, Dolby Atmos Height Virtualization Technology, DTS:X® and DTS Virtual:X™ processing are all supported to allow you to listen to immersive, multi-dimensional audio.
- Enhanced Audio Return Channel (eARC) HDMI support: Through the main HDMI output, connect your TV with eARC HDMI support to allow uncompressed and object-based audio formats like Dolby Atmos® and DTS:X® directly from a smart TV app to your AV receiver.
- Bringing you the latest in video compatibility: Support for the latest HDR formats including HDR10, HDR10+ (New in 2020), HLG, Dolby Vision, 4:4:4 color resolution and BT.2020, as well as Dynamic HDR (New in 2020) provides exceptional picture quality for brightness, clarity and contrast.
- The greatest technology for home cinema: With 8K/60Hz pass-through or upscaling, Dynamic HDR and Quick Media Switching (QMS), enjoy crystal clear picture and accurate detail.
- Advanced gaming specifications: With select 4K/120Hz* pass-through, Variable Refresh Rate (VRR), Auto Low Latency Mode (ALLM) and Quick Frame Transport (QFT), experience gaming thrills with amazing imaging and reduced lag.
- High-resolution streaming for audiophile approved sound: Ability to decode ALAC, FLAC and WAV lossless files up to 24-bit/192-kHz; DSD 2.8MHz and 5.6MHz tracks — enjoy your music exactly as the artist intended.
- Exclusive components elevate Marantz sonic signature: Marantz proprietary HDAM circuit boards, Current Feedback circuitry, 32-bit D/A converters, and Hybrid PLL Clock Jitter Reducer produce more detailed, dynamic sound.
- Stream music from your favorite sources: Play songs from Spotify, Pandora, TIDAL and more via AirPlay 2, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi and HEOS® Built-in.

Modern Musical Luxury

Dolby Atmos · dts:X · dts Virtual:X · 8K UHD HDR / HDCP 2.3 · HDMI · Dolby Vision · HDR10+ · HEOS Built-in

works with alexa · works with Hey Google · JOSH · Works with Apple AirPlay · Bluetooth · Wi Fi CERTIFIED · AUDYSSEY MULTEQ DYNAMIC VOLUME · Hi-Res AUDIO · HDAM · roon tested

Spotify · pandora · amazon music HD · TIDAL · TUNE IN · DEEZER · domotz · OVRC

SR5015
Technical Specs

Multichannel surround	
DTS HD Master / DTS:X / DTS:X Pro	• / • / -
DTS Neo:X / DTS Neural:X	- / •
DTS Virtual:X	•
IMAX Enhanced	-
Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Atmos / Dolby Atmos Height Virtualization	• / • / •
Dolby ProLogic IIz / Dolby Surround	- / •
Auro 3D	-
Multichannel Stereo	•
Max Number of Processing (Preamp) Channels	7.1
Sound Enhancements	
Discrete Power Amplifier	•
Copper Plated Chassis	-
Power Transformer: Toroidal / EI	EI
FLAC HD 192/24 / WAV 192/24 / ALAC 192/24	• / • / •
Current Feedback Topology	•
Hyper Dynamic Amplifier Modules (HDAM)	•
Pure Direct	•
Gold Plated RCA Terminals	-
Clock Jitter Reducer	-
Audyssey	MultEQ XT
Audyssey Dynamic EQ / Dynamic Volume	• / •
Audyssey LFC	-
Compressed Audio Enhancer: MDAX2	•
Network	
HEOS Multi-room and Streaming	•
Bluetooth Re-transmit for Bluetooth headphones	•
Alexa / Google Voice Assistant / Apple HomePod	• / • / •
Network Audio Sharing	•
Lossy Formats: MP3 / WMA / AAC	• / • / •
Lossless Formats: FLAC / ALAC / WAV	• / • / •
Lossless formats: FLAC HD 192/24 / WAV 192/24 / ALAC 192/24	• / • / •
DSD Audio Streaming	• (2.8/5.6MHz)
FLAC HD 192/24	•
WAV 192/24	•
ALAC 192/24	•
Gapless Playback	• (FLAC, WAV, ALAC, DSD)
AirPlay Audio Streaming	• (AirPlay2)
Internet Radio	• (TuneIn)
Spotify*	• (connect)
Pandora	•
SiriusXM	•
Other Streaming Services *	Amazon Music HD / TIDAL / Deezer / iHeart Radio / Napster / Soundcloud / Mood Mix
Compatible with Remote APP for Smart Phones	Marantz 2016 AVR Remote
Compatible with Remote APP for Tablets	Android / iOS / Amazon Kindle
Ethernet Ports	•
Wi-Fi	•
Bluetooth	•
HDMI	
HDMI Inputs: Back / Front	6 / 0
HDCP2.3 support	•
HDMI Outputs: Main / Zone	2 / -
Video Conversion Analog -> HDMI	•
Analog to HDMI scaling	480i/576i up to 8K 60/50
HDMI to HDMI scaling	up to 8K 60/50
GUI Overlay on HDMI	•
8K/60Hz / select 4K/120Hz*	• / •
3D / 4K / CEC / ARC	• / • / • / • / -
Enhanced ARC	•
HDR / HLG / Dolby Vision / HDR10+ / Dynamic HDR	• / • / • / • / •
ALLM (Auto Low Latency Mode) Pass-through for gaming	•
Variable Refresh Rate / Quick Flame Transport / Quick Media Switching	• / • / •
3D Signal Pass-Through	•
8K signal pass-through / scaling / GUI overlay	• / • / •
4K Signal Pass-Through / Scaling / GUI Overlay	• / • / •
HDMI Pass-Through in Standby Mode	•
Picture Adjust / Noise Reduction	• / •
CEC	•
DSD Audio Capability	-
Audio Return Channel	•
Auto LipSync	•

Multiroom / CI	
HEOS Multi-Room Integrated	•
HEOS Link Compatibility: IR/ IP	• / •
Multi-Room zones	2
Zone Audio Source: HDMI / Opt, Coax / Network, USB / Analog	• (2ch) / • (2ch) / • / •
Zone Audio Output: Speaker / Preout	• / •
Zone HDMI Output from HDMI Source	-
IP Control / RS232 Control / Web Control / App Control	• / • / • / •
IR Flasher In	•
Marantz Remote Bus	•
DC Trigger Output	1
HDMI Diagnostics	•
Others	
Auto Speaker Setup by Microphone	Audyssey MultEQ XT
FL Display	Port Hole
Graphic User Interface - GUI	Advanced
ISF Certification	•
GUI Languages	3
Setup Assistant	•
Smart Select	•
Firmware Update by Network / USB	• / •
Variable Cross Over	•
Optimized Bass Redirection	•
Bass Sync	-
ECO Mode	•
Auto Power Off	•
Sleep Timer	•
Video Inputs/Outputs	
Composite In / Out	2+1 / 1
Component In / Out	2 / 1
HDMI In / Out	6 / 2
Multi-Room Video Out: Video / HDMI	- / -
Audio Inputs/Outputs	
Analog In / Out	4+1 / -
Phono (MM) In	•
Digital In: Optical / Coaxial	2 / 2
Multi-Room Out: Analog / Digital	1 / -
Multichannel Pre Out	• (7.2)
Subwoofer Out	2
7.1 Multichannel Input	-
Other	
Speaker Terminal: Gold Plated Screw / Regular Screw	- / •
Number of Speaker Terminals	7
Speaker A / B	assignable
Bi-Amp Drive	assignable
Multi-Room Speaker Terminal	assignable
Front Inputs: Audio / Composite / Digital (Opt) / HDMI / USB	• / • / - / - / •
USB Audio / Made for iPod / Made for iPhone	• / - / -
AM/FM Tuner	•
General Power	
Number of Poweramps	7
Power Output (8 ohm, 20 Hz - 20 kHz, 0.08% 2ch Drive)	100 W
Power Output (6 ohm, 1 kHz, 0.7% 2ch Drive)	140 W
Power Output (6 ohm, 1 kHz, 10% 1ch Drive)	200 W
70% Guarantee	•
General	
Metal Front Panel	-
System Remote Control	RC042SR
Pre-Programmed / Learnable / LCD Display	- / - / -
Power Consumption in W	650
Power Consumption No-Sound (ECO on / off) in W	45 W / 75 W
Standby Consumption in W	0.2
CEC Standby Consumption in W	0.5
Network Standby Consumption in W	2.7
Maximum Dimensions Antenna:Horizontal:(W x D x H) Antenna:Vertical:(W x D x H) w/o Antenna:(W x D x H)	 17.3 x 13.7 x 6.3 17.3 x 13.7 x 9.1 17.3 x 13.3 x 6.3
Weight in LBS	22.3

Design and specifications are subject to change by Marantz without notice.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. DTS, the Symbol, DTS in combination with the Symbol, DTS:X, and the DTS:X logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. The Spotify software is subject to third party licenses found here: www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners. Marantz is a trademark or registered trademark of D&M Holdings, Inc.

*Does not support pass-through from all 4K/120Hz media sources

www.marantz.com

marantz®

SR5015 - Sound Mode Table

Integrated Amplifier

Sound mode table

Sound modes and channel output

◯ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of “Speaker Config.”.

Sound mode	Channel output									
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	◯									◎※ 5
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 6	◎※ 6	◎※ 6	◎※ 6	◎※ 6	◎※ 6	◎
Stereo	◯									◎
Dolby Atmos	◯	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Dolby TrueHD	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 6						◎
Dolby Digital Plus	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 6						◎
Dolby Digital	◯	◎	◎							◎
Dolby Surround ※ 1	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 7	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS:X ※ 2	◯	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS-HD	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 6						◎
DTS Express	◯	◎	◎	◎						◎
DTS 96/24	◯	◎	◎	◎						◎
DTS Surround	◯	◎	◎	◎						◎
DTS Neural:X ※ 3	◯	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Virtual:X ※ 4	◯	◎	◎	◎						◎
Multi Ch In	◯	◎	◎	◎※ 6						◎
Multi Ch Stereo	◯	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Virtual	◯									◎

※ 1 The applicable sound mode includes “Dolby Surround” and sound modes that have “+Dolby Surround” in the sound mode name.
※ 3 The applicable sound mode includes “DTS Neural:X” and sound modes that have “+Neural:X” in the sound mode name.
※ 4 The applicable sound mode includes “DTS Virtual:X” and sound modes that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
※ 5 Audio is output when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”.
※ 6 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
※ 7 Audio is not output when the “Speaker Virtualizer” in the menu is set to “On” and “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” in the menu is set to “1 spkr”.

Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surround Parameter								Tone ※ 9	Center Level Adjust ※ 10	Subwoofer Level Adjust ※ 11	Audyssey			M-DAX ※ 16
	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management ※ 2	Dynamic Compression ※ 3	Dialog Control ※ 4	Low Frequency Effects ※ 5	Speaker Virtualizer ※ 7	DTS Neural:X	Subwoofer				MultEQ® XT ※ 12 ※ 13 ※ 15	Dynamic EQ ※ 14 ※ 15	Dynamic Volume ※ 14 ※ 15	
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) ※ 1		○	○					○※ 18			○※ 18				
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) ※ 1		○	○	○	○					○	○				
Stereo		○	○	○	○			○※ 19	○		○※ 19	○	○	○	○
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○		○	○			○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○		○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○		○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital	○	○	○		○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Surround	○	○	○			○			○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS:X	○		○	○	○		○		○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS-HD	○		○		○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Express	○				○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS 96/24	○				○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Surround	○		○		○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Neural:X	○	○	○						○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS Virtual:X	○		○						○	○	○				○
Multi Ch In	○				○				○	○	○	○	○	○	
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○	○	○				○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Virtual		○	○	○	○				○		○	○	○	○	○

※ 1 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.
※ 2 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is played.
※ 3 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or DTS signal is played.
※ 4 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.
※ 5 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
※ 7 This item can be set when any Height, Ceiling or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are not used, or Surround speakers are not used.
※ 9 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”.
※ 10 This item cannot be set when “Center” is set to “None”.
※ 11 This item cannot be set when “Subwoofer” in the menu is set to “None”.
※ 12 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.
※ 13 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
※ 14 This item cannot be set when “MultEQ® XT” in the menu is set to “Off”.
※ 15 This item cannot be set when sound mode is “DTS Virtual:X” or sound mode that have “+Virtual:X” in the sound mode name.
※ 16 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
※ 18 This setting is available when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”.
※ 19 This item can be set when “Front” is set to “Small” or “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main”.

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

● This indicates the default sound mode. ○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

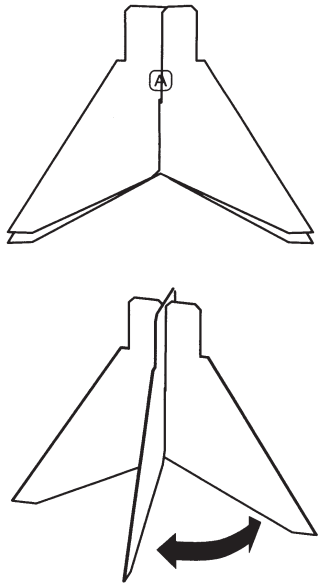
Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal							Multi-channel signal										
		Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS	Analog / PCM	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	PCM multi-channel
Direct																			
Direct		○	○	○	○	○	○	○※ 2	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Pure Direct																			
Pure Direct		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Stereo																			
Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Surround																			
Dolby Atmos	※ 1								●										
Dolby TrueHD		○							○※ 3	○									
Dolby Digital Plus			○						○※ 5		○								
Dolby Digital				○								○							
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Dolby Surround										●	●	●							
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Neural:X										○	○	○							
Dolby Surround		●	●	●	○	○	○	○											
DTS Surround																			
DTS:X MSTR / DTS:X													●						
DTS-HD MSTR					○※ 13									○※ 13					
DTS-HD HI RES					○※ 15									○※ 15					
DTS Express						○									○				
DTS ES Dscrt 6.1	※ 6															○			
DTS ES Mtrx 6.1	※ 6																○		
DTS 96/24							○※ 16											○※ 16	
DTS Surround							○									○	○	○	
DTS (-HD) + Dolby Surround														○	○	○	○	○	
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X														●※ 7	●※ 7	●※ 7	●※ 7	●※ 7	
DTS (-HD) / DTS:X + Virtual:X													○※ 8	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Neural:X		○	○	○	●※ 7	●※ 7	●※ 7	○											
DTS Virtual:X					○	○	○	○											
Multi Ch In																			
Multi Ch In																			●
Multi Ch In 7.1	※ 6																		○※ 19
Multi In + Dolby Surround																			○
Multi In + Neural:X																			○
Multi In + Virtual:X																			○
Original sound mode																			
Multi Ch Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Virtual		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○※ 20	○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○

※ 1 This item can be selected when using any of the Surround Back, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Front Dolby or Surround Dolby speaker. It can also be selected when the "Speaker Virtualizer" setting is turned "On".
※ 2 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is "Direct".
※ 3 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.
※ 5 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.
※ 6 This item can be selected when surround back speakers are used.
※ 7 This item cannot be selected when a DTS(-HD) format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
※ 8 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.
※ 13 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Master Audio.
※ 15 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Hi Resolution.
※ 16 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS 96/24.
※ 19 This item can be selected when the input signals contain surround back signals.
※ 20 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus signal.

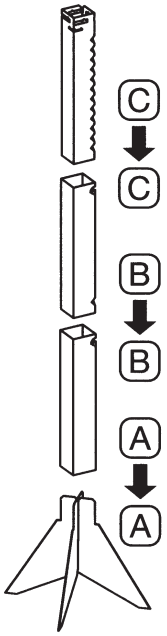
Microphone Stand Assembly Instructions

Montageanleitung Mikrofonständer
Instructions d'assemblage du support de microphone
Istruzioni per il montaggio del supporto microfono
Instrucciones de montaje del soporte del micrófono
Montage-instructies Microfoonstatief
Monteringsanvisning för mikrofonställ
Инструкции по сборке стойки под микрофон
Instrukcje montażu stojaka na mikrofon
マイクスタンド組み立て説明書
麦克风支架组装说明

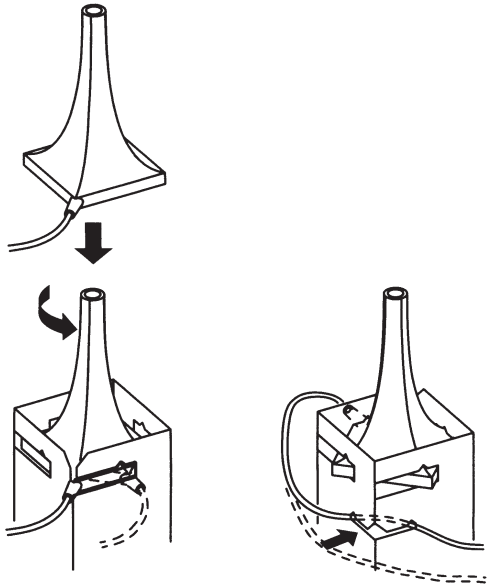
1



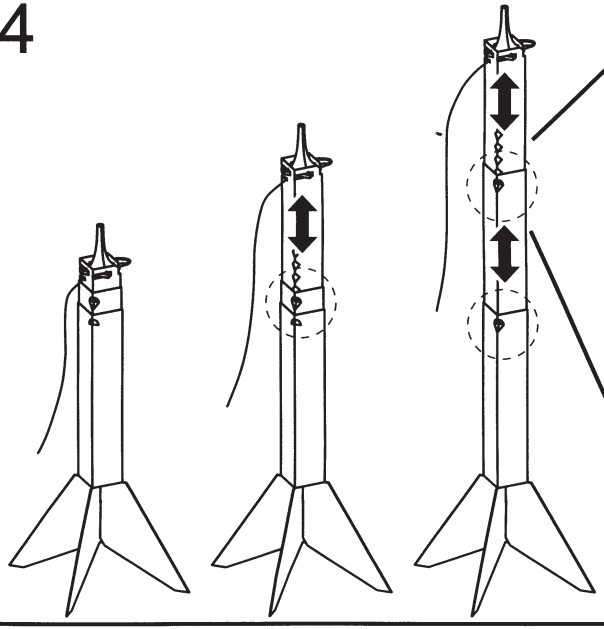
2



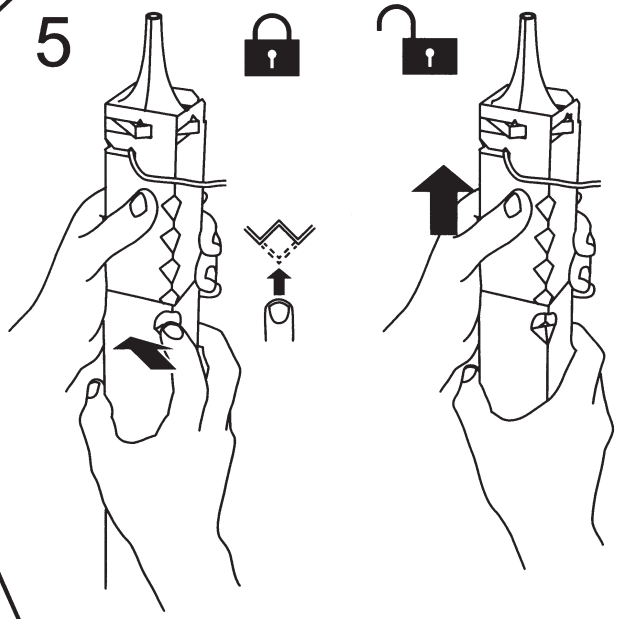
3



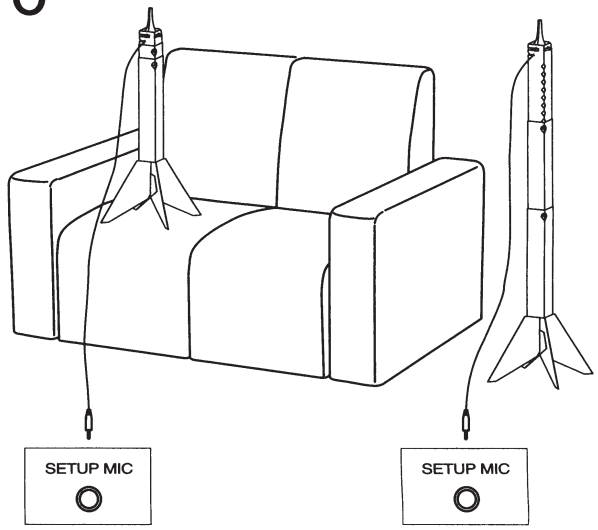
4



5



6



HEOS CLI Protocol Specification

- 1. Overview
  - 1.1 Supported music services
- 2. Connection
  - 2.1 Controller Design Guidelines
    - 2.1.1 Driver Initialization
    - 2.1.2 Caveats
      - 2.1.2.1 Compatibility
      - 2.1.2.2 Issues & Solutions
    - 2.1.3 Miscellaneous
- 3. Command and Response Overview
  - 3.1 Commands
  - 3.2 Responses
- 4. Command and Response Details
  - 4.1 System Commands
    - 4.1.1 Register for Change Events
    - 4.1.2 HEOS Account Check
    - 4.1.3 HEOS Account Sign In
    - 4.1.4 HEOS Account Sign Out
    - 4.1.5 HEOS System Heart Beat
    - 4.1.6 HEOS Speaker Reboot
    - 4.1.7 Prettify JSON response
  - 4.2 Player Commands
    - 4.2.1 Get Players
    - 4.2.2 Get Player Info
    - 4.2.3 Get Play State
    - 4.2.4 Set Play State
    - 4.2.5 Get Now Playing Media
    - 4.2.6 Get Volume
    - 4.2.7 Set Volume
    - 4.2.8 Volume Up
    - 4.2.9 Volume Down
    - 4.2.10 Get Mute
    - 4.2.11 Set Mute
    - 4.2.12 Toggle Mute
    - 4.2.13 Get Play Mode
    - 4.2.14 Set Play Mode
    - 4.2.15 Get Queue
    - 4.2.16 Play Queue Item
    - 4.2.17 Remove Item(s) from Queue
    - 4.2.18 Save Queue as Playlist
    - 4.2.19 Clear Queue
    - 4.2.20 Move Queue
    - 4.2.21 Play Next
    - 4.2.22 Play Previous
    - 4.2.23 Set QuickSelect [LS AVR Only]
    - 4.2.24 Play QuickSelect [LS AVR Only]
    - 4.2.25 Get QuickSelects [LS AVR Only]
    - 4.2.26 Check for Firmware Update
  - 4.3 Group Commands
    - 4.3.1 Get Groups
    - 4.3.2 Get Group Info
    - 4.3.3 Set Group
    - 4.3.4 Get Group Volume
    - 4.3.5 Set Group Volume
    - 4.2.6 Group Volume Up
    - 4.2.7 Group Volume Down
    - 4.3.8 Get Group Mute
    - 4.3.9 Set Group Mute
    - 4.3.10 Toggle Group Mute
  - 4.4 Browse Commands
    - 4.4.1 Get Music Sources
    - 4.4.2 Get Source Info
    - 4.4.3 Browse Source
    - 4.4.4 Browse Source Containers
    - 4.4.5 Get Source Search Criteria
    - 4.4.6 Search
    - 4.4.7 Play Station

        - 4.4.8 Play Preset Station
        - 4.4.9 Play Input source
            - Limitations for the system when used multi devices.
        - 4.4.10 Play URL
        - 4.4.11 Add Container to Queue with Options
        - 4.4.12 Add Track to Queue with Options
        - 4.4.13 Get HEOS Playlists
        - 4.4.14 Rename HEOS Playlist
        - 4.4.15 Delete HEOS Playlist
        - 4.4.16 Get HEOS History
        - 4.4.17 Retrieve Album Metadata
        - 4.4.18 Get Service Options for now playing screen - OBSOLETE
        - 4.4.19 Set service option
- 5. Change Events (Unsolicited Responses)
    - 5.1 Sources Changed
    - 5.2 Players Changed
    - 5.3 Group Changed
    - 5.4 Player State Changed
    - 5.5 Player Now Playing Changed
    - 5.6 Player Now Playing Progress
    - 5.7 Player Playback Error
    - 5.8 Player Queue Changed
    - 5.9 Player Volume Changed
    - 5.10 Player Repeat Mode Changed
    - 5.11 Player Shuffle Mode Changed
    - 5.12 Group Volume Changed
    - 5.13 User Changed
- 6.0 Error Codes
    - 6.1 General Error Response
    - 6.2 Error Code description

Version	HEOS Version	Modifications	Date	Author
1.0	1.280.96	Initial release.	12/20/2014	Prakash Mortha
1.1	1.304.61	Add set service option command.	05/27/2015	Prakash Mortha
1.2	1.310.170	Remove support for play url. Special characters ('&,'=', and '%') are encoded.	08/06/2015	Prakash Mortha
1.3	1.331.70	Add reboot command. Support Tidal/SoundCloud /Amazon Music. Extend get_search_criteria to indicate if Play-All option is supported on searched tracks. Ability to create new station through Artist/Show /Track name. Add service specific transport control option list.	12/03/2015	Prakash Mortha
1.4	1.331.120	Bug fixes. Documentation changes: Add transport control options for Amazon Music. Known Issues: Range queries doesn't work on Amazon Music.	01/21/2016	Prakash Mortha

1.5	1.349.101	Add preset command to play stations from HEOS Favorites. Add players network connection type in get_players and get_player_info command responses. Fix issue with range queries on Amazon Music. Add issues and solutions section. Refer Issues & Solutions. Remove support for Rdio as it is gone.	04/13/2016	Prakash Mortha
1.6	1.364.110	Add limitations while using inputs. Add AVR inputs list.	07/25/2016	Prakash Mortha
1.7	1.373.100	Add Source id for each Music service and source. Remove unused change events: source_data_changed, group_changed, player_mute_changed, group_mute_changed.	09/21/2016	Prakash Mortha
1.8	1.397.190	Add support for Juke music service. Add support for adding station to HEOS Favorites from browse menu. Expand Thumbs Up/Down option to more music services. [LS AVR only] Add new commands set_quickselect, play_quickselect, and get_quickselects.	04/12/2017	Prakash Mortha
1.9	1.406.140	Add support to Play Url	05/23/2017	Prakash Mortha
1.10	1.430.160	Add check_update command. Add new response field 'serial' to get_players and get_player_info command responses. Add new response fields 'available' and 'service_username' to get_music_sources and get_source_info command reponses. Add QQMusic to the supported music service list.	11/20/2017	Prakash Mortha
1.11	1.442.150	Add new field value (unknown) to network connection types. Clarify on 'available' field in 'Get Music Sources' and 'Get Source Info' command response.	02/15/2018	Prakash Mortha
1.12	1.442.150	Document more inputs	05/14/2018	Prakash Mortha

1.13	1.481.130	Remove support for Juke Music service. Juke support is currently removed from HEOS. Add option '21 - Playable Container' to support playable containers on Windows Media share. Add popular list of system errors.	10/31/2018	Prakash Mortha
1.14	1.505.140	Remove "inputs/analog" from input source name for Play input source command. Add "inputs /analog_in_1", "inputs /analog_in_2" and "inputs /recorder_in_1" to input source name for Play input source command.	04/24/2019	Yasuchika Ishida

1. Overview

The Denon HEOS is a network connected, wireless, multi-room music system. The HEOS Command Line Interface (CLI) allows external control systems to manage, browse, play, and get status from the Denon HEOS products. The HEOS CLI is accessed through a telnet connection between the HEOS product and the control system. The control system sends commands and receives responses over the network connection. The CLI commands and responses are in human readable (ascii) format. The command is a text string and the responses are in JSON format. The commands and responses for browsing music servers and services use a RESTFUL like approach while other commands and responses are more static.

1.1 Supported music services

Following table list out all supported online music services through HEOS. Please note, currently not all services are supported through CLI.

Source ID (sid)	Service Name	Browse through CLI	Search/New station through CLI
1	Pandora	Yes	Yes (Create New Station)
2	Rhapsody	Yes	Yes
3	TuneIn	Yes	Yes
4	Spotify	No	No
5	Deezer	Yes	Yes
6	Napster	Yes	Yes
7	iHeartRadio	Yes	Yes (Create New Station)
8	Sirius XM	Yes	No
9	Soundcloud	Yes	Yes
10	Tidal	Yes	Yes
11	Future service	N/A	N/A
12	Rdio	Not supported in HEOS	Not supported in HEOS
13	Amazon Music	Yes	No
14	Future service	N/A	N/A
15	Moodmix	No	No
16	Juke	Not supported in HEOS	Not supported in HEOS
17	Future service	N/A	N//A
18	QQMusic	No	No

Following table list out other supported music sources through CLI.

Source ID (sid)	Source name	Browse supported	Search supported
1024	Local USB Media/ Local DLNA servers	Yes	Yes
1025	HEOS Playlists	Yes	No
1026	HEOS History	Yes	No
1027	HEOS aux inputs	Yes	No
1028	HEOS Favorites	Yes	No

2. Connection

The HEOS products can be discovered using the UPnP SSDP protocol. Through discovery, the IP address of the HEOS products can be retrieved. Once the IP address is retrieved, a telnet connection to port 1255 can be opened to access the HEOS CLI and control the HEOS system. The HEOS product IP address can also be set statically and manually programmed into the control system. Search target name (ST) in M-SEARCH discovery request is 'urn:schemas-denon-com:device:ACT-Denon:1'.

The control system should use various Get commands to determine the players and groups currently in the HEOS system.

Controller software can control all HEOS speakers in the network by establishing socket connection with just one HEOS speaker. It is recommended not to establish socket connection to each HEOS speaker. This is to decrease network traffic caused by establishing socket connection to each HEOS speaker. Controller software can open multiple socket connections to the single HEOS speaker. Typically controllers will use one connection to listen for change events and one to handle user actions.

2.1 Controller Design Guidelines

2.1.1 Driver Initialization

In order to reduce number of UPnP devices running on the network, HEOS Speaker runs CLI module in a dormant mode. HEOS speaker spawns CLI core modules when the controller establishes the first socket connection to the speaker. What it all means for controller?

- Inability of CLI module to process player commands. This is because, by nature of UPnP, CLI module need some time to discover all players before they can be identified by their unique Id (pid)
- Spew of events when controller initially connects to the speaker. In order to avoid excessive event handling in a event driven controller system, the following initialization sequence is suggested:
    1. Un-register for change events. By default speaker doesn't send unsolicited events but still it is a good idea to send un-register command.This is done through 'register_for_change_events' command.
    2. If user credentials are available, sign-in to HEOS user account. This is done through 'sign_in' command.
    3. Retrieve current HEOS ecosystem status. This is done through commands like 'get_players', 'get_sources', 'get_groups', 'get_queue', 'get_now_playing_media', 'get_volume', 'get_play_state' etc.
    4. Register for change events. This is done through 'register_for_change_events' command.
- If controller design involves disconnect and reconnect to HEOS speakers through CLI, it is recommended to keep a idle connection to HEOS Speaker thus avoiding CLI module to set back to dormant mode.

2.1.2 Caveats

2.1.2.1 Compatibility

Please take a look at the following suggestions to avoid breaking controller code due to future enhancements

- The 'message' field part of HEOS response is a string. The attribute value pair in this message string is delimited by '&'. Further the attribute name and value is separated by '=' sign. Please note that new arguments can be added in the future.
- New JSON objects may be added to the 'payload' as part of future enhancements.

2.1.2.2 Issues & Solutions

Changes made to HEOS user account, through HEOS app will not reflect through CLI until the controller is restarted. Ex: Adding or removing music services to HEOS user account, through HEOS app will not reflect in get_music_sources command response until the controller is restarted.

> *Solution: Controller needs to re sign-in to HEOS account to reflect changes made through HEOS app, with out restarting the controller. So, in addition to performing HEOS account sign-in as part of driver initialization process, it is highly recommended to provide sign-out and sign-in option through end users UI screen. End user need to re-signIn when he adds/removes music service through HEOS app.*

2.1.3 Miscellaneous

- Controllers can add custom argument SEQUENCE=<number> in browse commands to associate command and response. This is possible because the 'message' field in the response packet includes all the arguments sent in the command. Please let us know if you need additional custom argument other than 'SEQUENCE'. This is to avoid accidentally using HEOS command arguments for special purpose.
- Maximum number of simultaneous socket connections supported by HEOS speaker is 32.
- Service specific transport control options are as follows:

Services	Type	Supported Transport Controls by CLI	Supported Transport Controls in HEOS App (No significance. Only for Reference)
Amazon Music	station	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Deezer	station	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext	Play, Pause, PlayNext
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
iHeart Radio	station	Play, Stop	Play, Stop, Scan
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Napster	station	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext	Play, Pause, PlayNext
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Pandora	station	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext	Play, Pause, PlayNext
	song	NA	NA
Rhapsody	station	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext	Play, Pause, PlayNext
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
SoundCloud	station	NA	NA
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
SiriusXM	station	Play, Stop	Play, Stop
	song	NA	NA
Tidal	station	NA	NA
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Tunein	station	Play, Stop	Play, Stop
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Local Music	station	NA	NA
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
Favorites	station	*Depending on playing service	*Depending on playing service
	song	NA	NA

Playlists	station	NA	NA
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
History	station	*Depending on playing service	*Depending on playing service
	song	Play, Pause, Stop, PlayNext, PlayPrevious	Play, Pause, PlayNext, PlayPrevious
AUX Input	station	Play, Stop	Play, Stop
	song	NA	NA

3. Command and Response Overview

3.1 Commands

HEOS CLI commands are in the following general format:
heos://command_group/command?attribute1=value1&attribute2=value2&…&attributeN=valueN

Command string delimiter is "\r\n".

Note: Special characters, i.e '&', '=', and '%' in attribute/value needs to be encoded to '%26(&)', '%3D(=)', and '%25(%)'. Most of the time, controllers use the same string that is received in previous command response. For example, while preparing 'play_stream' /'add_to_queue' command, controllers will use the strings obtained in 'browse' command response. Those strings are already encoded. So, controllers are not required to perform any special action. However, controllers might need to decode the encoded strings before they can be properly displayed on the controller GUI.

3.2 Responses

The responses to commands are in JSON format and use the following general structure:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "'command_group'/'command'",
                "result": "'success' or 'fail'",
                "message": "other result information'"
            },

    "payload":{
                    'Rest of response data'
                }
}
```

Some command responses will not include a payload.
If the "result" of the command is "fail" then the "message" information contains the error codes for the failure. The error codes can be found in section 'Error Code description'.

Some commands will also cause unsolicited events. For example, sending the 'player/clear_queue' command will cause the Player Queue Changed event and could also cause the Player State Changed event.

When the actual response can't be populated immediately, a special response will be sent back as shown below. This usually occurs during browse/search as CLI needs to retrieve data from remote media server or online service.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "'command_group'/'command'",
                "result": "'success'",
                "message": "command under process'"
            }

}
```

JSON command response delimiter is "\r\n".

Note: Special characters '&', '=', and '%' in the JSON response fields are encoded to '%26(&)', '%3D(=)', and '%25(%)'.

4. Command and Response Details

4.1 System Commands

4.1.1 Register for Change Events

By default HEOS speaker does not send Change events. Controller needs to send this command with enable=on when it is ready to receive unsolicit responses from CLI. Please refer to "Driver Initialization" section regarding when to register for change events.

Command: heos://system/register_for_change_events?enable='on_or_off'

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
enable	Register or unregister for change events.	on,off

Response:
```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/register_for_change_events",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "enable='on_or_off'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/register_for_change_events?enable=on

4.1.2 HEOS Account Check

Command: heos://system/check_account

This command returns current user name in its message field if the user is currently singed in.
Response:
```
{
    "heos": {
                 "command": "system/check_account",
                 "result": "success",
                 "message": "signed_out" or "signed_in&un=<current user name>"
             }
}
```

Example: heos://system/check_account

4.1.3 HEOS Account Sign In

Command: heos://system/sign_in?un=heos_username&pw=heos_password

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
un	HEOS account username	N/A
pw	HEOS account password	N/A

Response:
```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/sign_in ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "signed_in&un=<current user name>"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/sign_in?un=user@gmail.com&pw=12345

4.1.4 HEOS Account Sign Out

Command: heos://system/sign_out
Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/sign_out ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "signed_out"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/sign_out

4.1.5 HEOS System Heart Beat

Command: heos://system/heart_beat
Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/heart_beat ",
                "result": "success"
                "message": ""
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/heart_beat

4.1.6 HEOS Speaker Reboot

Using this command controllers can reboot HEOS device. This command can only be used to reboot the HEOS device to which the controller is connected through CLI port.

Command: heos://system/reboot
Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/reboot",
                "result": "success"
                "message": ""
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/reboot

4.1.7 Prettify JSON response

Helper command to prettify JSON response when user is running CLI controller through telnet.

Command: heos://system/prettify_json_response?enable='on_or_off'

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
enable	Enable or disable prettification of JSON response.	on,off

Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": "system/prettify_json_response",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "enable='on_or_off'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://system/prettify_json_response?enable=on

4.2 Player Commands

4.2.1 Get Players

Command: heos://player/get_players

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id	N/A
gid	pid of the Group leader	N/A
network	Network connection type	• wired • wifi • unknown (not applicable for external controllers)
lineout	LineOut level type	1 - variable 2 - Fixed
control	Only valid when lintout level type is Fixed (2).	1 - None 2 - IR 3 - Trigger 4 - Network
serial	Only listed if device has valid serial number	N/A

Note: The group id field (gid) is optional. The 'gid' field will only be appeared if the player(s) is part of a group.
Note: control field is only populated when lineout level type is Fixed (lineout = 2)

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_players",
                "result": "success",
                "message": ""
            },
    "payload": [
                 {
                    "name": "'player name 1'",
                    "pid": "player id 1'",
                    "gid": "group id'",
                    "model": "'player model 1'",
                    "version": "'player verison 1'"
                    "network": "wired"
                    "lineout": "level type"
                    "control": "control option"
                    "serial": "serial number"
                },
                {
                    "name": "'player name 2'",
                    "pid": "player id 2'",
                    "gid": "group id'",
                    "model": "'player model 2'",
                    "version": "'player verison 2'"
                    "network": "wifi"
                    "lineout": "level type"
                    "control": "control option"
                    "serial": "serial number"
                },
                .
```

```
                .
                .
                {
                    "name": "'player name N'",
                    "pid": "player id N'",
                    "gid": "group id'",
                    "model": "'player model N'",
                    "version": "'player verison N'"
                    "network": "wifi"
                    "lineout": "level type"
                    "control": "control option"
                    "serial": "serial number"
                }
            ]
}
```

Example: heos://player/get_players

4.2.2 Get Player Info

Command: heos://player/get_player_info?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
gid	pid of the Group leader	N/A
network	Network connection type	• wired • wifi • unknown (not applicable for external controllers)
lineout	LineOut level type	1 - variable 2 - Fixed
control	Only valid when lintout level type is Fixed (2).	1 - None 2 - IR 3 - Trigger 4 - Network
serial	Only listed if device has valid serial number	N/A

Note: The group id field (gid) is optional. The 'gid' field will only be appeared if the player(s) is part of a group.
Note: control field is only populated when lineout level type is Fixed (lineout = 2)

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_player_info",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            },
    "payload": {
                    "name": "'player name'",
                    "pid": "player id'",
                    "gid": "group id'",
                    "model": "'player model'",
                    "version": "'player verison'"
                    "network": "wired"
                    "lineout": "level type"
                    "control": "control option"
                    "serial": "serial number"
                }
}
```

Example: heos://player/get_player_info?pid=1

4.2.3 Get Play State

Command: heos://player/get_play_state?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/get_play_state ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&state='play_state'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/get_play_state?pid=1

4.2.4 Set Play State

Command: heos://player/set_play_state?pid=player_id&state=play_state

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
state	Player play state	play, pause, stop

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/set_play_state ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&state='play_state'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/set_play_state?pid=1&state=play

Note: Play state of a group can be controlled by sending set_play_state command to any of the player in the group.

4.2.5 Get Now Playing Media

Command: heos://player/get_now_playing_media?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
id (options)	Options available for now playing media	Following options are currently supported for now playing media 11 - Thumbs Up 12 - Thumbs Down 19 - Add station to HEOS Favorites

Response:

The following response provides example when the speaker is playing a song.

Note: For local music and DLNA servers sid will point to Local Music Source id.


```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_now_playing_media",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            },
    "payload": {
                    "type" : "'song'",
                    "song": "'song name'",
                    "album": "'album name'",
                    "artist": "'artist name'",
                    "image_url": "'image url'",
                    "mid": "'media id'",
                    "qid": "'queue id'",
                    "sid": source_id

                    "album_id": "Album Id'"
                }
}
```


The following response provides example when the speaker is playing a station.


```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_now_playing_media",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            },
    "payload": {
                    "type" : "'station'",
                    "song": "'song name'",
                    "station": "'station name'",
                    "album": "'album name'",
                    "artist": "'artist name'",
                    "image_url": "'image url'",
                    "mid": "'media id'",
                    "qid": "'queue id'",
                    "sid": source_id
                }

    "options": [
                    {
                        "play": [
                                    {
                                        "id": 19,
                                        "name": "Add to HEOS Favorites"
                                    }
                                ]
                    }
                ]
}
```


Example: heos://player/get_now_playing_media?pid=1

4.2.6 Get Volume

Command: heos://player/get_volume?pid='player_id'

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ get_volume ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&level='vol_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/get_volume?pid=1

4.2.7 Set Volume

Command: heos://player/set_volume?pid=player_id&level=vol_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
level	Player volume level	0 to 100

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ set_volume ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&level='vol_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/set_volume?pid=2&level=30

4.2.8 Volume Up

Command: heos://player/volume_up?pid=player_id&step=step_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
step	Player volume step level	1 to 10(default 5)

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ volume_up ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&step='step_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/volume_up?pid=2&step=5

4.2.9 Volume Down

Command: heos://player/volume_down?pid=player_id&step=step_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

level	Player volume step level	1 to 10(default 5)

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ volume_down ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&step='step_level'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://player/volume_down?pid=2&step=5

4.2.10 Get Mute

Command: heos://player/get_mute?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": " player/ get_mute ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&state='on_or_off'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://player/get_mute?pid=1

4.2.11 Set Mute

Command: heos://player/set_mute?pid=player_id&state=on_or_off

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
state	Player mute state	on, off

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ set_mute ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&state='on_or_off'"

             }
}
```

Example: heos://player/set_mute?pid=3&state=off

4.2.12 Toggle Mute

Command: heos://player/toggle_mute?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration

pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/ toggle_mute ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id"

            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/toggle_mute?pid=3

4.2.13 Get Play Mode

Command: heos://player/get_play_mode?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/get_play_mode",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&&repeat=on_all_or_on_one_or_off&shuffle=on_or_off"
            }
}
```


Example: hoes://player/get_play_mode?pid=1

4.2.14 Set Play Mode

Command: heos://player/set_play_mode?pid='player_id'&repeat=*on_all*_or_*on_one*_or_*off*&shuffle=*on*_or_*off*

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
repeat	Player repeat state	*on_all, on_one, off*
shuffle	Player shuffle state	*on, off*

Response:

```
{
   "heos": {
                "command": " player/set_play_mode",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&repeat=on_all_or_on_one_or_off&shuffle=on_or_off"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/set_play_mode?pid=1&repeat=on_all&shuffle=off

4.2.15 Get Queue

Command: heos://player/get_queue?pid=player_id&range=start#, end#

Range is start and end record index to return. Range parameter is optional. Omitting range parameter returns all records but a maximum of 100 records are returned per response.

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
range	Range is start and end record index to return. Range parameter is optional. Omitting range parameter returns all records up to a maximum of 100 records per response.	range starts from 0

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_queue",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "'pid=player_id&range=start#, end#"
            },
    "payload": [
                    {
                        "song": "'song name 1'",
                        "album": "'album name 1'",
                        "artist": "'artist name 1'",
                        "image_url": "'image_url 1'",
                        "qid": "'queue id 1'",
                        "mid": "'media id 1'"

                        "album_id": "AlbumId 1'"
                    },
                    {
                        "song": "'song name 2'",
                        "album": "'album name 2'",
                        "artist": "'artist name 2'",
                        " image_url": "'image_url 2'",
                        "qid": "'queue id 2'",
                        "mid": "'media id 2'"

                        "album_id": "AlbumId 2'"

                    },
                    .
                    .
                    .
                    {
                        "song": "'song name N'",
                        "album": "'album name N'",
                        "artist": "'artist name N'",
                        " image_url": "'image_url N'",
                        "qid": "'queue id N'",
                        "mid": "'media id N'"

                        "album_id": "AlbumId N'"
                    }
                ]
}
```

Example: heos://player/get_queue?pid=1&range=0,10

4.2.16 Play Queue Item

Command: heos://player/play_queue?pid=player_id&qid=queue_song_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration

pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
qid	Queue id for song returned by 'get_queue' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/play_queue",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&qid='queue_id'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/play_queue?pid=2&qid=9

4.2.17 Remove Item(s) from Queue

Command: heos://player/remove_from_queue?pid=player_id&qid=queue_id_1,queue_id_2,⋯,queue_id_n

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
qid	List of comma separated queue_id's where each queue id for song is returned by 'get_queue' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/remove_from_queue ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&qid=queue_id_1, queue_id_2,⋯,queue_id_n'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/remove_from_queue? pid=1&qid=4,5,6

4.2.18 Save Queue as Playlist

Command: heos://player/save_queue?pid=player_id&name=playlist_name

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
name	String for new playlist name limited to 128 unicode characters	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/save_queue ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&name='playlist_name'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/save_queue?pid=1&name=great playlist

4.2.19 Clear Queue

Command: heos://player/clear_queue?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/clear_queue ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/clear_queue

4.2.20 Move Queue

Command: heos://player/move_queue_item?pid=player_id&sqid=source_queue_id_1,source_queue_id_2,...,source_queue_id_n&dqid=destination_queue_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
sqid	List of comma separated queue_id's where each queue id for song is returned by 'get_queue' command	list item range:1 to size of queue
dqid	User select this value as the destination of contents which is indicated in sqid.	1 to size of queue.

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/move_queue_item ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&sqid='source_queue_id_1','source_queue_id_2',...,'source_queue_id_n',dqid='destination_queue_id'
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/move_queue_item?pid=2,4&sqid=2&dqid=6

4.2.21 Play Next

Command: heos://player/play_next?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/play_next",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/play_next?pid=1

4.2.22 Play Previous

Command: heos://player/play_previous?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/play_previous",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/play_previous?pid=1

4.2.23 Set QuickSelect [LS AVR Only]

Command: heos://player/set_quickselect?pid=player_id&id=<quick select id>

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
id	Quick select Id to which currently playing source needs to be stored	1-6

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/set_quickselect",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id&id=<quick select id>"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/set_quickselect?pid=1&id=2

Currently supported HEOS products: LEGO AVR, HEOS BAR

4.2.24 Play QuickSelect [LS AVR Only]

Command: heos://player/play_quickselect?pid=player_id&id=<quick select id>

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
id	Quick select Id whose source needs to be played	1-6

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/play_quickselect",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id&id=<quick select id>"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://player/play_quickselect?pid=1&id=2

Currently supported HEOS products: LEGO AVR, HEOS BAR

4.2.25 Get QuickSelects [LS AVR Only]

Command: heos://player/get_quickselects?pid=player_id

Command: heos://player/get_quickselects?pid=player_id&id=<quick select id>

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
id	Optional Id for which information is required. By default information regarding all quick selects will be returned	1-6

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_quickselects",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id"
            },
    "payload": [
                 {
                     "id": 1,
                     "name": "Quick Select 1'"
                 },
                 {
                     "id": 2,
                     "name": "Quick Select 2'"
                 },
                 .
                 .
                 .
                 {
                     "id": 6,
                     "name": "Quick Select 6'"
                 }
              ]
}
```

Example: heos://player/get_quickselects?pid=1

Currently supported HEOS products: LEGO AVR, HEOS BAR

4.2.26 Check for Firmware Update

Command: heos://player/check_update?pid=player_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
update	Indicates if firmware update is available or not	*update_none, update_exist*

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " player/check_update",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id"
            }

 "payload": {
                  "update" : "update_none/update_exist",
            }
}
```

Example: heos://player/check_update?pid=1

4.3 Group Commands

4.3.1 Get Groups

Command: heos://group/get_groups
Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/get_groups",
                "result": "success",
                "message": ""
            },
    "payload": [
                    {
                        "name": "'group name 1'",
                        "gid": "group id 1'",
                        "players": [
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name 1",
                                            "pid": "'player id 1'",
                                            "role": "player role 1 (leader or member)'"
                                        },
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name 2",
                                            "pid": "'player id 2'",
                                            "role": "player role 2 (leader or member)'"
                                        },
                                        .
                                        .
                                        .
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name N",
                                            "pid": "'player id N'",
                                            "role": "player role N (leader or member)'"
                                        }
                                    ]
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "'group name 2'",
                        "gid": "group id 2'",
                        "players": [
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name 1",
                                            "pid": "'player id 1'",
                                            "role": "player role 1 (leader or member)'"
                                        },
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name 2",
                                            "pid": "'player id 2'",
                                            "role": "player role 2 (leader or member)'"
                                        },
                                        .
                                        .
                                        .
                                        {
                                            "name": "player name N",
                                            "pid": "'player id N'",
                                            "role": "player role N (leader or member)'"
                                        }
                                    ]
                    },
                    .
                    .
                    .
                    {
```

```
                "name": "'group name N'",
                "gid": "group id N'",
                "players": [
                        {
                            "name": "player name 1",
                            "pid": "'player id 1'",
                            "role": "player role 1 (leader or member)'"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "player name 2",
                            "pid": "'player id 2'",
                            "role": "player role 2 (leader or member)'"
                        },
                        .
                        .
                        .
                        {
                            "name": "player name N",
                            "pid": "'player id N'",
                            "role": "player role N (leader or member)'"
                        }
                    ]
            }
        ]
}
```


Example: heos://group/get_groups

4.3.2 Get Group Info

Command: heos://group/get_group_info?gid=group_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:


```
{
    "heos": {
            "command": "player/get_groups",
            "result": "success",
            "message": "gid=group_id"
        },
    "payload": {
                "name": "'group name 1'",
               "gid": "group id 1'",
               "players": [
                        {
                            "name": "player name 1",
                            "pid": "'player id 1'",
                            "role": "player role 1 (leader or member)'"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "player name 2",
                            "pid": "'player id 2'",
                            "role": "player role 2 (leader or member)'"
                        },
                        .
                        .
                        .
                        {
                            "name": "player name N",
                            "pid": "'player id N'",
                            "role": "player role N (leader or member)'"
                        }
                    ]
            }
}
```

Example: heos://group/get_group_info&?gid=1

4.3.3 Set Group

This command is used to perform the following actions:

Create new group:

Creates new group. First player id in the list is group leader.

Ex: heos://group/set_group?pid=3,1,4

Modify existing group members:

Adds or delete players from the group. First player id should be the group leader id.

Ex: heos://group/set_group?pid=3,1,5

Ungroup all players in the group

Ungroup players. Player id (pid) should be the group leader id.

Ex: heos://group/set_group?pid=3

Command: heos://group/set_group?pid=player_id_leader, player_id_member_1,⋯,player_id_member_n

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	List of comma separated player_id's where each player id is returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command; first player_id in list is group leader	N/A

Response:

The following response provides example when a group is created/modified.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/set_group ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='new group_id'&name='group_name'&pid='player_id_1, player_id_2,⋯,player_id_n'
            }
}
```

The following response provides example when all the speakers in the group are un-grouped.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "player/set_group ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'
            }
}
```

Example: heos://group/set_group?pid=3,1,4

4.3.4 Get Group Volume

Command: heos://group/get_volume?gid=group_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "group/get_volume ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='group_id'&level='vol_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://group/get_volume?gid=1

4.3.5 Set Group Volume

Command: heos://group/set_volume?gid=group_id&level=vol_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A
level	Group volume level	0 to 100

Response:


```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "group/set_volume ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='group_id'&level='vol_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://group/set_volume?gid=1&level=30

4.2.6 Group Volume Up

Command: heos://group/volume_up?gid=group_id&step=step_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A
step	Group volume step level	1 to 10(default 5)

Response:


```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " group/ volume_up ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='group_id'&step='step_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://group/volume_up?gid=1&step=5

4.2.7 Group Volume Down

Command: heos://group/volume_down?gid=group_id&step=step_level

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A
level	Group volume step level	1 to 10(default 5)

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " group/ volume_down ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='group_id'&step='step_level'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://group/volume_down?gid=1&step=5

4.3.8 Get Group Mute

Command: heos://group/get_mute?gid=group_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "group/ get_mute ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid='group_id'&state='on_or_off'"
            }
}
```


Example: heos://group/get_mute?gid=1

4.3.9 Set Group Mute

Command: heos://group/set_mute?gid=group_id&state=on_or_off

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A
state	Group mute state	on, off

Response:

```
{
     "heos": {
                "command": "group/ set_mute ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "gid=group_id'&state='on_or_off'"
             }
}
```


Example: heos://group/set_mute?gid=1&state=off

4.3.10 Toggle Group Mute

Command: heos://group/toggle_mute?gid=group_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
gid	Group id returned by 'get_groups' command	N/A

Response:

```
{
     "heos": {
                  "command": "group/ toggle_mute ",
                  "result": "success",
                  "message": "gid=group_id"
              }
}
```

Example: heos://group/toggle_mute?gid=1

4.4 Browse Commands

4.4.1 Get Music Sources

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
available	Only valid for online music services. If true 'service_username' will provide user name of the service account. This should not be treated as the music service being supported through CLI or not. The services supported through CLI is listed in 'Supported music services' section.	N/A
service_username	Provides user name of the service account. Only avaialable for online music services when 'avaialble' field is set to true.	N/A

Command: heos://browse/get_music_sources
Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                 "command": "browse/get_music_sources",
                "result": "success",
                "message": ""
},
    "payload": [
                   {

                       "name": "source name 1",
                       "image_url": "source logo url 1",
                       "type": "source type 1",
                       "sid": source_id_1,
                       "available": "true/false",
                       "service_username": "user name of the service account"
                   },
                   {

                       "name": "source name 2",
                       "image_url": "source logo url 2",
                       "type": "source type 2",
                        "sid": source_id_2,
                       "available": "true/false",
                       "service_username": "user name of the service account"
                   },
                   {

                       "name": "source name N",
                       "image_url": "source logo url N",
                       "type": "source type N",
                        "sid": source_id_N,
                       "available": "true/false",
                       "service_username": "user name of the service account"
```

```
                }
            ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/get_music_sources

The following are valid source types:

music_service

heos_service

heos_server

dlna_server

4.4.2 Get Source Info

Command: heos://browse/get_source_info?sid=source_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command (Or) Source id returned by 'browse' command when browsing source types 'heos_server' and 'heos_service'	N/A
available	Only valid for online music services. If true 'service_username' will provide user name of the service account. This should not be treated as the music service being supported through CLI or not. The services supported through CLI is listed in 'Supported music services' section.	N/A
service_username	Provides user name of the service account. Only avaialable for online music services when 'avaialble' field is set to true.	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/get_source_info",
                "result": "success",
                "message": ""
},
    "payload": [
                {

                    "name": "source name",
                    "image_url": "source logo url",
                    "type": "source type",
                     "sid": source_id_1,
                    "available": "true/false",
                    "service_username": "user name of the service account"

                },
            ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/get_source_info

The following are valid source types:

music_service

heos_service

heos_server

dlna_server

4.4.3 Browse Source

Command: heos://browse/browse?sid=source_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command (Or) Source id returned by 'browse' command when browsing source types 'heos_server' and 'heos_service'	N/A
id (options)	Options available for current browse level	Following options are currently supported for 'Browse Source' command 13 - Create New Station (Pandora, iHeartRadio) 20 - Remove from HEOS Favorites (Favorites)
scid	criteria for creating new station	Possibilities: 1 - Artist (default) (Criteria String: Create New Station by Artists) 5 - Show (Criteria String: Create New Station by Shows) 3 - Track (Criteria String: Create New Station by Tracks)
range	Range is start and end record index to return. Range parameter is optional. Omitting range parameter returns all records up to a maximum of either 50 or 100 records per response. The default maximum number of records depend on the service type.	range starts from 0 NOTE: Range in Browse source command is only supported while browsing Favorites

This command is used under two scenarios.

Browsing actual media sources of type 'heos_server' and 'heos_service'.

The command 'Get Music Sources' lists all music servers (type 'heos_server') in the network under one virtual source called 'Local Music'. Other virtual source that represents all auxiliary inputs (type 'heos_service') is 'AUX Input'.

Browsing top music view.

Results of this command depends on the music source selected.

Note: Optionally this command returns service 'options' that are available for current browse items. Please refer to 'Get Service Options for now playing screen' for service options available on now playing screen.

Note: The following response provides examples of the various service options. The actual response will depend on the service options available for a given source type.

Response while browsing actual media sources of type 'heos_server' and 'heos_service'. These includes 'Local Music', 'History', 'AUX Inputs', 'Playlists', and 'Favorites'.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/browse",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid=source_id&returned=items_in_current_response&count=total_items_available"
},
```

```
    "payload": [
                    {
                        "name": "'source name 1'",
                        "'image_url": "'source logo url 1'",
                        "sid": "source id 1'",
                        "type": "'source type 1'"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "'source name 2'",
                        "'image_url": "'source logo url 2'",
                        "sid": "source id 2'",
                        "type": "'source type 2'"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "'source name N'",
                        "'image_url": "'source logo url N'",
                        "sid": "source id N'",
                        "type": "'source type N'"
                    }
                ],
    "options": [
                    {
                        "browse": [
                                    {
                                        "id": 13,
                                        "scid": "criteria Id",
                                        "name": "criteria string"
                                    }
                                ]
                    }
                ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/browse?sid=1

Response when browsing top music view in an actual music server/music services.

Note: the following response provides examples of the various media types. The actual response will depend on the source browsed and the hierarchy supported by that source.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/browse",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid=source_id&returned=items_in_current_response&count=total_items_available"
},
    "payload": [
                    {
                        "container": "yes",
                        "playable": "no",
                        "type": "artist",
                        "name": "'artist name'",
                        "image_url": "'artist image url'",
                        "cid": "container id'",
                        "mid": "media id"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "yes",
                        "playable": "yes",
                        "type": "album",
                        "name": "'album name'",
                        "image_url": "'album image url'",
                        "artist": "'artist name'",
                        "cid": "'container id'",
                        "mid": "'media id'"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "no",
                        "playable": "yes",
                        "type": "song",
                        "name": "'song name'",
                        "image_url": "'album image url'",
                        "artist": "'artist name'",
```

```
                    "album": "'album name'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                },
                {
                    "container": "yes",
                    "playable": "no",
                    "type": "container",
                    "name": "'container name'",
                    "image_url": "'container image url'",
                    "cid": "'container id'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                },
                {
                    "container": "no",
                    "playable": "yes",
                    "type": "station",
                    "name": "'station name'",
                    "image_url": "'station url'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                }
            ],
    "options": [
                {
                    "browse": [
                                {
                                    "id": 20,
                                    "name": "Remove from HEOS Favorites"
                                }
                            ]
                }
            ]
}
```


Example: heos://browse/browse?sid=1346442495

Supported Sources: Local Media Servers, Playlists, History, Aux-In, Favorites, TuneIn, Pandora, Rhapsody, Deezer, SiriusXM, iHeartRadio, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud, Amazon Music

4.4.4 Browse Source Containers

Command: heos://browse/browse?sid=source_id&cid=container_id&range=start#, end#

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
cid	Container id returned by 'browse' or 'search' command	N/A
range	Range is start and end record index to return. Range parameter is optional. Omitting range parameter returns all records up to a maximum of either 50 or 100 records per response. The default maximum number of records depend on the service type.	range starts from 0
count	Total number of items available in the container. NOTE: count value of '0' indicates unknown container size. Controllers needs to query until the return payload is empty (returned attribute is 0).	0 - unknown >1 - valid count
returned	Number of items returned in current response	N/A
id (options)	Options available for current browse level	

		Various options are presented as part of 'Browse Source container' command response. Supported options under each browse menu depends on service type and container type. Possible options under browse menu are listed below: 1 - Add Track to Library 2 - Add Album to Library 3 - Add Station to Library 4 - Add Playlist to Library 5 - Remove Track from Library 6 - Remove Album from Library 7 - Remove Station from Library 8 - Remove Playlist from Library 13 - Create New Station 19 - Add to HEOS Favorites 21 - Playable Container

The following are valid media types:

song

station

genre

artist

album

container

Note: A "yes" for the "container" field as well as the "playable" field implies that the container supports adding all media items to the play queue. Adding all media items of the container to the play queue is performed through "Add containers to queue"command.

Note: The option '21 - Playable Container' indicates that the container that is serving the tracks is playable. This option is mainly helpful with the Windows media share. With the Windows media container, HEOS can't determine if a container has playable tracks or not until the container is browsed for its items. When this option appears in browse response, the Controller software could add a virtual item i.e. 'Play all Tracks' along with presenting tracks in the container. When user selects the virtual item, the controller software could then send play command to play the container.

Note: Following response provides examples of the various media types. The actual response will depend on the source browsed and the hierarchy supported by that source.

Response:


```
{

    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/browse",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid='source_id&cid='container_id'&range='start,
end'&returned=items_in_current_response&count=total_items_available"
            },
   "payload": [
                 {
                     "container": "yes",
                     "playable": "no",
                     "type": "artist",
                     "name": "'artist name'",
                     "image_url": "'artist image url'",
                     "cid": "container id'",
                     "mid": "media id"
                 },
                 {
                     "container": "yes",
                     "playable": "yes",
                     "type": "album",
```

```
                    "name": "'album name'",
                    "image_url": "'album image url'",
                    "artist": "'artist name'",
                    "cid": "'container id'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                },
                {
                    "container": "no",
                    "playable": "yes",
                    "type": "song",
                    "name": "'song name'",
                    "image_url": "'album image url'",
                    "artist": "'artist name'",
                    "album": "'album name'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                },
                {
                    "container": "yes",
                    "playable": "no",
                    "type": "container",
                    "name": "'container name'",
                    "image_url": "'container image url'",
                    "cid": "'container id'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                },
                {
                    "container": "no",
                    "playable": "yes",
                    "type": "station",
                    "name": "'station name'",
                    "image_url": "'station url'",
                    "mid": "'media id'"
                }
            ],
    "options": [
                 {
                     "browse": [
                                 {
                                     "id": 4,
                                     "name": "Add Playlist to Library"
                                 }
                             ]
                 }
             ]
}
```


Example: heos://browse/browse?sid=2&cid=TopAlbums&range=0,100

Supported Sources: Local Media Servers, Playlists, History, Aux-In, TuneIn, Pandora, Rhapsody, Deezer, SiriusXM, iHeartRadio, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud, Amazon Music

4.4.5 Get Source Search Criteria

Command: heos://browse/get_search_criteria?sid=source_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
playable	Indicates if Play-All option is supported on searched tracks.	yes or no
cid	Prefix to search string used while adding entire search results to play queue Only valid when 'playable' is 'yes'.	Currently supported prefix: SEARCHED_TRACKS- Note: Can be extended, avoid hard code

	Example command to play all tracked, searched with string 'earth': heos://browse/add_to_queue?pid=<playerid>&sid=2&cid=SEARCHED_TRACKS-**earth**&aid=1	

Note: the following response provides examples of the various search criteria types. The actual response will depend on the source and the search types supported by that source.
Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/ get_search_criteria ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid='source_id "
            },
    "payload": [
                {
                    "name": "Artist",
                    "scid": "'search_criteria_id'",
                    "wildcard": "yes_or_no",
                },
                {
                    "name": "Album",
                    "scid": "'search_criteria_id'",
                    "wildcard": "yes_or_no",
                },
                {
                    "name": "Track",
                    "scid": "'search_criteria_id'",
                    "wildcard": "yes_or_no",
                    "playable": "yes_or_no",
                    "cid": "Prefix to search string",
                },
                {
                    "name": "Station",
                    "scid": "'search_criteria_id'",
                    "wildcard": "yes_or_no",
                }
               ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/get_search_criteria?sid=3

Supported Sources: Local Media Servers, TuneIn, Rhapsody, Deezer, SiriusXM, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud

4.4.6 Search

Command: heos://browse/search?sid=source_id&search=search_string&scid=search_criteria&range=start#, end#

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
search	String for search limited to 128 unicode characters and may contain '*' for wildcard if supported by search criteria id	N/A
scid	Search criteria id returned by 'get_search_criteria' command	artist, album, song, station
count	Total number of items available in the container. NOTE: count value of '0' indicates unknown container size. Controllers needs to query until the return payload is empty (returned attribute is 0).	0 - unknown >1 - valid count

range	Range is start and end record index to return. Range parameter is optional. Omitting range parameter returns all records up to a maximum of 50/100 records per response. The default maximum number of records depend on the service type.	range starts from 0
returned	Number of items returned in current response	N/A

Response:
Note: the following response provides examples of the various media types. The actual response will depend on the source searched and the results returned for the search string.


```
{
    "heos": {
                    "command": "browse/search",
                    "result": "success",
                    "message": "sid='source_id&scid='search_criteria_id'&range='start#,
end#'&returned=items_in_current_response&count='total_items_available"
                },
    "payload": [
                    {
                        "container": "yes",
                        "playable": "no",
                        "type": "artist",
                        "name": "'artist name'",
                        "image_url": "'artist image url'",
                        "cid": "container id'",
                        "mid": "media id"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "yes",
                        "playable": "yes",
                        "type": "album",
                        "name": "'album name'",
                        "image_url": "'album image url'",
                        "artist": "'artist name'",
                        "cid": "'container id'",
                        "mid": "'media id'"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "no",
                        "playable": "yes",
                        "type": "song",
                        "name": "'song name'",
                        "image_url": "'album image url'",
                        "artist": "'artist name'",
                        "album": "'album name'",
                        "mid": "'media id'"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "yes",
                        "playable": "no",
                        "type": "container",
                        "name": "'container name'",
                        "image_url": "'container image url'",
                        "cid": "'container id'",
                        "mid": "'media id'"
                    },
                    {
                        "container": "no",
                        "playable": "yes",
                        "type": "station",
                        "name": "'station name'",
                        "image_url": "'station url'",
                        "mid": "'media id'"
                    }
                ],
    "options": [
```

```
                {
                    "browse": [
                                {
                                    "id": 2,
                                    "name": "Add Album to Library"
                                }
                            ]
                }
            ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/search?sid=2&search="U2"&scid=1

Supported Sources: Local Media Servers, TuneIn, Rhapsody, Deezer, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud

4.4.7 Play Station

Command: heos://browse/play_stream?pid=player_id&sid=source_id&cid=container_id&mid=media_id&name=station_name

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
cid	Container id that is used to browse current container. Ignore if container id doesn't exists as in case of playing station obtained through 'Search' command.	N/A
mid	Media id returned by 'browse'or 'search' command	N/A
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
name	Station name returned by 'browse' command.	N/A

Note: The mid for this command must be a 'station' media type.
Response:
Note: this command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if a new stream is played.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " browse/play_stream ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&sid='source_id&cid='container_id'&mid='media_id'&name='station_name'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/play_stream?pid=1&sid=2&cid='CID-55'&mid=15376&name=Q95

Supported Sources: History, Favorites, TuneIn, Pandora, Rhapsody, Deezer, SiriusXM, iHeartRadio, Napster, SoundCloud, Amazon Music

4.4.8 Play Preset Station

Command: heos://browse/play_preset?pid=player_id&preset=preset_position

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
preset	Station offset in HEOS Favorites	1 and above

Response:
Note: this command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if a new stream is played.

```
{
```

```
    "heos": {
                "command": " browse/play_preset",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&preset='preset_number'"
            }
}
```
Example: heos://browse/play_preset?pid=1&preset=2

Supported Sources: HEOS Favorites

4.4.9 Play Input source

Command to play input source on the same speaker:

heos://browse/**play_input**?**pid**=player_id&**input**=input_name

Command to play input source on another speaker:

heos://browse/**play_input**?**pid**=destination_player_id&**spid**=source_player_id&**input**=input_name

OBSOLETE command that requires sid:

heos://browse/**play_stream**?**pid**=player_id&**sid**=source_id&**mid**=media id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
pid	player id of the selected speaker (destination HEOS speaker) Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
mid	media id returned by 'browse' command	N/A
spid	player id of the HEOS device which is acting as the source Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
input	input source name Note: Validity of Inputs depends on the type of source HEOS device	"inputs/aux_in_1" "inputs/aux_in_2" "inputs/aux_in_3" "inputs/aux_in_4" "inputs/aux_single" "inputs/aux1" "inputs/aux2" "inputs/aux3" "inputs/aux4" "inputs/aux5" "inputs/aux6" "inputs/aux7" "inputs/line_in_1" "inputs/line_in_2" "inputs/line_in_3" "inputs/line_in_4" "inputs/coax_in_1" "inputs/coax_in_2" "inputs/optical_in_1" "inputs/optical_in_2" "inputs/hdmi_in_1" "inputs/hdmi_in_2" "inputs/hdmi_in_3" "inputs/hdmi_in_4" "inputs/hdmi_arc_1" "inputs/cable_sat" "inputs/dvd" "inputs/bluray"

		"inputs/game" "inputs/mediaplayer" "inputs/cd" "inputs/tuner" "inputs/hdradio" "inputs/tvaudio" "inputs/phono" "inputs/usbdac" "inputs/analog_in_1" "inputs/analog_in_2" "inputs/recorder_in_1"

Response for command "heos://browse/play_input?pid=player_id&input=input_name" :
Note: this command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if an aux in stream is played.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/play_input",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid=player_id&input=input_name"
            }
}
```

Limitations for the system when used multi devices.

- Distribution External Input to other players is limited to one player or one group .
  You can not play External Input that has been selected already.
  Also, When it playing external input on itself, can not be distributed to other players.

Examples:

heos://browse/play_input?pid=1234&input=inputs/aux_in_1

heos://browse/play_input?pid=1234&spid=9876&input=inputs/aux_in_1

heos://browse/play_stream?pid=1&sid=1441320818&mid=inputs/aux_in_1

4.4.10 Play URL

Command: heos://browse/play_stream?pid=player_id&url=url_path

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A
url	Absolute path to a playable stream	N/A

Response:
Note: The attribute value pair ?"url=url_path" should be the last attribute value pair in the play_stream command.
This is required to handle url_path with special characters and command delimiters.
This command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if url is played.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " browse/play_stream ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='palyer_id'&url='path to stream"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/play_stream?pid=1&url=http://10.110.25.159:49152/web/138.mp3

4.4.11 Add Container to Queue with Options

Command: heos://browse/add_to_queue?pid=player_id&sid=source_id&cid=container_id&aid=add_criteria

Attribute	Description	Enumeration

sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
cid	Container id returned by 'browse' or 'search' command	N/A
aid	Add criteria id as defined by enumerations ->	1 – play now 2 – play next 3 – add to end 4 – replace and play
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Note: The cid for this command must be a 'playable' container type.
Response:
Note: this command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if a new song is played.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " browse/add_to_queue",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&sid='source_id'&cid='container_id'&aid='add_criteria'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/add_to_queue?pid=1&sid=5&cid=Artist/All&aid=2

Supported Sources: Playable containers from Local Media Servers, Playlists, History, Rhapsody, Deezer, iHeartRadio, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud. Also searched tracks as described in get_search_criteria command.

4.4.12 Add Track to Queue with Options

Command: heos://browse/add_to_queue?pid=player_id&sid=source_id&cid=container_id&mid=media_id&aid=add-criteria

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
cid	Container id that is used to 'browse' or 'search' current container	N/A
mid	Media id returned by 'browse' or 'search' command	N/A
aid	Add criteria id as defined by enumerations ->	1 – play now 2 – play next 3 – add to end 4 – replace and play
pid	Player id returned by 'get_players' or 'get_groups' command	N/A

Note: The mid for this command must be a 'track' media type.

Response:
Note: this command will cause a Now Playing Change Event to occur if a new song is played.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " browse/add_to_queue",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&sid='source_id'&cid='container_id'&mid='media_id'&aid='add_criteria'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/add_to_queue?pid=1&sid=8&cid=Artists/All&mid=9&aid=1

Supported Sources: Local Media Servers, Playlists, History, Rhapsody Tracks, Deezer Tracks, iHeartRadio Tracks, Napster, Tidal, SoundCloud, Amazon Music. Please note Amazon Music tracks are played without adding to HEOS queue.

4.4.13 Get HEOS Playlists

Refer to Browse Sources and Browse Source Containers

4.4.14 Rename HEOS Playlist

Command: heos://browse/rename_playlist?sid=source_id&cid=contaiiner_id&name=playlist_name

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command; select HEOS source to get HEOS playlists.	N/A
cid	Container id returned in 'Get HEOS Playlists' command	N/A
name	String for new playlist name limited to 128 unicode characters	N/A

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/rename_playlist ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid='source_id'&cid='contaiiner_id'&name='playlist_name'"
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/rename_playlist?sid=11&cid=234&name=new name

4.4.15 Delete HEOS Playlist

Command: heos://browse/delete_playlist?sid=source_id&cid=contaiiner_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command; select HEOS source to get HEOS playlists.	N/A
cid	Container id returned in 'Get HEOS Playlists' command	N/A

Response:
Note: The HEOS History has two containers: one for songs and another for stations. The following response example is for the songs container. The station container returns the list of stations.

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/delete_playlist ",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid='source_id'&cid='contaiiner_id'
            }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/delete_playlist?sid=11&cid=234

4.4.16 Get HEOS History

Refer to Browse Sources and Browse Source Containers

4.4.17 Retrieve Album Metadata

Rhapsody and Napster services doesn't provide album art url while browsing for tracks. Controllers can use this command to retrieve album art url while browsing for tracks.

Retrieve image url associated with a given album id. This command facilitates controllers to retrieve and update their UI with cover art, if image_url in browse/search/get_queue/get_now_playing_media command response is blank.

Command: heos://browse/retrieve_metadata?sid=source_id&cid=album_id

Attribute	Description	Comment
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command; select HEOS source to get HEOS playlists.	Currently supported media sources are Rhapsody/Napster
cid	Container id returned by 'browse' command or 'get_now_playing_media' command	Rhapsody/Napster album ids

Note: Supported music service is Rhapsody and Napster

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/retrieve_metadata",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid=2&cid=album_id&returned=items_in_current_response&count=total_items_available"
            },
              "payload": [
                          {
                            "album_id": "album_id",
                            "images": [
                                        {
                                          "image_url": "URL to image file",
                                          "width": current image width
                                        },

                                        .

                                        .

                                        .
                                        {
                                           "image_url": "URL to image file",
                                           "width": current image width
                                        }

                                      ]
                          }
                      ]
}
```

Example: heos://browse/retrieve_metadata?sid=2&cid=Alb.184664171

4.4.18 Get Service Options for now playing screen - OBSOLETE

Obsolete - Now get_now_playing_media command will include supported option for currently playing media.

Command: heos://browse/get_service_options?sid=source_id

Attribute	Description	Enumeration
sid	Source id returned by 'get_music_sources' command	N/A
id (options)	Options available on now playing screen	Following options are currently supported for 'Get Service options for now playing

		screen': 11 - Thumbs Up 12 - Thumbs Down

Note: This command returns service options that are only available on 'now playing' screen. Please refer to 'Browse Source' and 'Browse Source Containers' for service options available on various browse levels.

Note: the following response provides examples of the various service options. The actual response will depend on the service options available for a given source type.

Response:


```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "browse/get_service_options",
                "result": "success",
                "message": ""
            },
"payload": [
            {
                "play": [
                            {
                                "id": 11,
                               "name": "Thumbs Up"
                            },
                            {
                                 "id": 12,
                                 "name": "Thumbs Down"
                            }
                        ]
            }
          ]
}
```


Example: heos://browse/get_service_options?sid=5

4.4.19 Set service option

Set service option is a generic command used to select any of the supported service options provided through 'Get Service Options for now playing screen', 'Browse Sources' and 'Browse Source Containers' command response.

Following service options are currently supported:

Option id	Example Command	Parameter description
1 - Add Track to Library `Supported Services: Napster`	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=1&**mid**=Tra.174684187	mid - track id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
2 - Add Album to Library `Supported Services: Napster`	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=2&**cid**=Alb.174684186	cid - album id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
3 - Add Station to Library `Supported Services: Napster`	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=3&**mid**=sas.6513639	mid - station id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
4 - Add Playlist to Library `Supported Services: Napster`	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=4&**cid**=LIBPLAYLIST-pp.175573149&**name**=Lupe Fiasco	cid - playlist id obtained through 'browse source containers' command name - name of the playlist obtained through 'browse source container' command
5 - Remove Track from Library `Supported Services: Napster`	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=5&**mid**=Tra.174684187	mid - track id obtained through 'browse source containers' command

6 - Remove Album from Library Supported Services: Napster	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=6&**cid**=LIBALBUM-Alb.174684186	cid - album id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
7 - Remove Station from Library Supported Services: Napster	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=7&**mid**=sas.6513639	mid - station id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
8 - Remove Playlist from Library Supported Services: Napster	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=8&**cid**=LIBPLAYLIST-mp.186017722	cid - playlist id obtained through 'browse source containers' command
11 - Thumbs Up Supported Services provide this option in Get Now Playing Media command response	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=1&option=11&**pid**=-409995282	pid - player id obtained through 'get_players' command
12 - Thumbs Down Supported Services provide this option in Get Now Playing Media command response	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=1&option=12&**pid**=-409995282	pid - player id obtained through 'get_players' command
13 - Create New Station by Artists Supported Services:Pandora, iHeartRadio	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=1&option=13&**name**=Love&scid=1 heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=1&option=13&**name**=Love&range=0,10	name - search string for creating new station Note: This command returns station ids. Controllers need to use 'play station' command to play a station. Note: Range parameter is optional to limit results
13 - Create New Station by Shows Supported Services: iHeartRadio	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=7&option=13&**name**=Love&scid=5	name - search string for creating new station through show Note: This command returns station ids. Controllers need to use 'play station' command to play a station.
13 - Create New Station by Tracks Supported Services: iHeartRadio	heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=7&option=13&**name**=Love&scid=3	name - search string for creating new station through track Note: This command returns station ids. Controllers need to use 'play station' command to play a station.
19 - Add station to HEOS Favorites	**Following command is used on now-playing-screen to add currently playing station to HEOS Favorites** heos://browse/set_service_option?option=19&pid=-409995282 **Following command is used on browse screen to add a station to HEOS Favorites** heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=3&option=19&mid=sas.6513639&name=Folk Radio	pid - player id obtained through 'get_players' command mid - station id obtained through 'browse' command name - station name obtained through 'browse' command
20 - Remove from HEOS Favorites	heos://browse/set_service_option?option=20&mid=sas.6513639	mid - station id obtained through 'browse source' command on Favorites

Note: Option 13 (Create New Station) supports optional range queries.

Response:

```
{
     "heos": {
                "command": " browse/set_service_option",
                "result": "success",
                "message": "sid=source_id&option=option_id&mid=media_id"
             }
}
```

Example: heos://browse/set_service_option?sid=2&option=1&mid=Tra.174684187

5. Change Events (Unsolicited Responses)

5.1 Sources Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/sources_changed",
            }
}
```

5.2 Players Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/players_changed",
            }
}
```

5.3 Group Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/groups_changed",
            }
}
```

5.4 Player State Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/player_state_changed",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&state='play_state'"
            }
}
```

5.5 Player Now Playing Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " event/player_now_playing_changed",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            }
}
```

5.6 Player Now Playing Progress

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " event/player_now_playing_progress",
                "message": "pid=player_id&cur_pos=position_ms&duration=duration_ms"
            }
}
```

5.7 Player Playback Error

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " event/player_playback_error",
                "message": "pid=player_id&error=Could Not Download"
            }
}
```

Note: error string represents error type. Controller can directly display the error string to the user.

5.8 Player Queue Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": " event/player_queue_changed",
                "message": "pid='player_id'"
            }
}
```

5.9 Player Volume Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/player_volume_changed ",
                "message": "pid='player_id'&level='vol_level'&mute='on_or_off'"
            }
}
```

5.10 Player Repeat Mode Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/repeat_mode_changed",
                "message": "pid=’ player_id’ &repeat='on_all_or_on_one_or_off”
            }
}
```

5.11 Player Shuffle Mode Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
                "command": "event/shuffle_mode_changed",
```

```
            "message": "pid=’ player_id’ &shuffle='on_or_off”
        }
}
```

5.12 Group Volume Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
            "command": "event/group_volume_changed ",
            "message": "gid='group_id'&level='vol_level'&mute='on_or_off'"
        }
}
```

5.13 User Changed

Response:

```
{
    "heos": {
            "command": "event/user_changed",
            "message": "signed_out" or "signed_in&un=<current user name>"
        }
}
```

6.0 Error Codes

6.1 General Error Response

Respone:

```
{
    "heos": {
            "command": "'command_group'/'command'",
            "result": "'fail'",
            "message": "eid="error_id&text=error text&command_arguments"
        }
}
```

6.2 Error Code description

Description	Code	Text Example
Unrecognized Command	1	Command not recognized.
Invalid ID	2	ID not valid
Wroing Number of Command Arguments	3	Command arguments not correct.
Requested data not available	4	Requested data not available.
Resource currently not available	5	Resource currently not available.
Invalid Credentials	6	Invalid Credentials.
Command Could Not Be Executed	7	Command not executed.
User not logged In	8	User not logged in.
Parameter out of range	9	Out of range
User not found	10	User not found
Internal Error	11	System Internal Error
System Error	12	System error&syserrno=XXX

		Popular system errors are: -9: Indicates that the action was sent to the remote service, but the remote service returned an error response -1061: The user has not registered this service -1063: The user is not logged in -1056: User not found -1201: General content services authentication error -1232: Content services user authorization error -1239: User account related parameters are invalid
Processing Previous Command	13	Processing previous command
Media can't be played	14	cannot play
Option no supported	15	Option not supported
Too many commands in message queue to process	16	Too many commands in queue
Reached skip limit	17	Reached skip limit

marantz

Thank you for your Marantz AV component purchase!

DIRAC

Dirac Live is an ***optional***, paid service that will be available for your Marantz AV component in the future. Once available, your Marantz AV component will receive a firmware update to enable Dirac Live capability. In order for your Marantz AV component to receive this update, it must be connected to a network.

To learn more, please visit https://www.dirac.com/marantz/

FRANÇAIS

Merci pour l'achat de ce composant AV Marantz!
Dirac Live est un service payant en ***option*** qui sera bientôt offert pour votre composant AV Marantz. Lorsque le service sera disponible, le logiciel de votre composant AV Marantz sera mis à jour pour permettre l'utilisation de la fonction Dirac Live. Pour permettre la réception de la mise à jour de votre composant AV Marantz, celui-ci doit être connecté à un réseau.

Pour en savoir plus, consultez le site https://www.dirac.com/marantz/

ESPAÑOL

Gracias por comprar el componente AV Marantz.
Dirac Live es un servicio ***opcional*** de pago que estará disponible para su componente AV Marantz en el futuro. Una vez disponible, su componente AV Marantz recibirá una actualización del firmware para habilitar la capacidad Dirac Live. Para que su componente AV Marantz reciba esta actualización, debe estar conectado a una red.

Para obtener más información, visite https://www.dirac.com/marantz/

D&M Holdings Inc. 5431 10783 00AM
VQE1A1330Z

Notes on radio

USA CANADA

FCC Information (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION

- **Product Name: AV Surround Receiver / AV Surround Amplifier**
- **Model Number: CINEMA 70S / CINEMA 60 / CINEMA 60 DAB / CINEMA 50 / CINEMA 40**
- **CONTAINS TRANSMITTER MODULE FCC ID: MBBVOP13082E**

This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Sound United, LLC
5541 Fermi Court Carlsbad, CA 92008, USA
Tel. (800) 377-7655

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT

This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by Marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. IMPORTANT (For Network)

When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer. Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

4. CAUTION (For Bluetooth/Wi-Fi)

- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirement, separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons.
- This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- 5.15-5.25 GHz band is restricted to indoor operations only.

5. NOTE

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio / TV technician for help.

INFORMATION FCC (Pour la clientèle étasunienne)

1. INFORMATIONS DE CONFORMITE

- **Nom du produit : Récepteur Audio-Vidéo / Amplificateur Surround Audio-Vidéo**
- **Numéro de modèle : CINEMA 70S / CINEMA 60 / CINEMA 60 DAB / CINEMA 50 / CINEMA 40**
- **CONTIENT MODULE ÉMETTEUR FCC ID : MBBVOP13082E**

Ce produit est conforme à la section 15 du règlement FCC. L'utilisation est sujette aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) ce produit ne provoque pas d'interférences nocives et (2) ce produit doit accepter toute interférence, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement non souhaitable.

Sound United, LLC
5541 Fermi Court Carlsbad, CA 92008, USA
Tel. (800) 377-7655

2. REMARQUE IMPORTANTE: NE PAS MODIFIER CE PRODUIT

Ce produit, lorsqu'il est installé comme indiqué dans les instructions de ce manuel, est conforme aux normes FCC. Les modifications qui ne sont pas expressément approuvées par Marantz peuvent annuler l'autorisation FCC à utiliser le produit.

3. IMPORTANT (Pour réseau)

Lors du branchement de ce produit à un routeur ou à un concentrateur réseau, n'utilisez qu'un câble STP ou ScTP LAN blindé (disponible chez un détaillant).
Suivre toutes instructions d'installation. Dans le cas contraire, cela pourrait annuler l'autorisation FCC à utiliser cet appareil.

4. PRECAUTION (Pour Bluetooth/Wi-Fi)

- Afin de répondre aux exigences de conformité FCC sur l'exposition aux RF, une distance d'au moins 20 cm doit être maintenue entre cet appareil et toutes les personnes.
- Cet appareil ainsi que son antenne ne doivent pas se trouver à proximité immédiate, ni être utilisés en association avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.
- La bande 5,15-5,25 GHz est limitée uniquement à une utilisation en intérieur.

5. NOTE

Ce produit a été testé et il est conforme aux limitations des dispositifs numériques de Class B, en vertu de la section 15 du règlement FCC. Ces limitations sont conçues pour fournir une protection raisonnable contre les interférences nocives sur une installation résidentielle.
Ce produit génère, utilise et émet de l'énergie de radiofréquence et s'il n'est pas installé et utilisé conformément aux instructions, il peut entraîner des interférences néfastes avec les communications radio. Toutefois, nous ne pouvons pas garantir l'absence d'interférence avec certaines installations. En cas d'interférences néfastes sur la réception de la radio ou de la télévision provoquées par cet appareil, survenant au moment de l'activation ON ou de la désactivation OFF, nous conseillons à l'utilisateur d'essayer de corriger l'interférence comme suit:

- Réorienter ou déplacer l'antenne.
- Augmenter la distance entre l'équipement et le récepteur.
- Connecter l'appareil à la prise murale d'u n circuit différent de celui du récepteur.
- Consulter un revendeur local agréé pour la distribution de ce type de produit ou un technicien radio / TV expérimenté.

IC Information (For Canadian customers)

1. PRODUCT
CONTAINS TRANSMITTER MODULE IC: 11657A-VOP13082E

This product complies with RSS rules of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

2. CAUTION

To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that permitted for successful communication.

(i) the device for operation in the band 5,150 – 5,250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.
(ii) high-power radars are allocated as primary users (i.e. priority users) of the bands 5,250 – 5,350 MHz and 5,650 – 5,850 MHz and that these radars could cause interference and/or damage to LE-LAN devices.

Informations sur IC (pour les clients canadiens)

1. APPAREIL
CONTIENT MODULE ÉMETTEUR IC : 11657A-VOP13082E

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme règles CNR du Canada. L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif. Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

2. ATTENTION

Afin de réduire le risque d'interférence aux autres utilisateurs, il faut choisir le type d'antenne et son gain de façon à ce que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (p.i.r.e.) ne soit pas supérieure au niveau requis pour l'obtention d'une communication satisfaisante.

(i) les dispositifs fonctionnant dans la bande 5 150 – 5 250 MHz sont réservés uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.
(ii) De plus, les utilisateurs devraient aussi être avisés que les utilisateurs de radars de haute puissance sont désignés utilisateurs principaux (c.-à-d., qu'ils ont la priorité) pour les bandes 5 250 – 5 350 MHz et 5 650 – 5 850 MHz et que ces radars pourraient causer du brouillage et/ou des dommages aux dispositifs LAN-EL.

For Canadian customers / Pour les clients canadiens:
CAN ICES-3 (B) / NMB-3 (B)
"for indoor use only"

❑ RF Exposure Information

This equipment complies with FCC / IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that are deemed to comply without testing of specific absorption ratio (SAR).

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

Cet équipement est conforme aux normes d'exposition aux radiations FCC / IC définies pour un environnement non contrôlé et satisfait les directives d'exposition à la radiofréquence (RF) dans le supplément C des OET65 et RSS-102 des règles d'exposition à la fréquence radio (RF) IC. Cet équipement a de très faibles niveaux d'énergie RF qui sont jugés conformes sans test de taux d'absorption spécifique (SAR).

Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec une distance minimale de 20 cm entre le radiateur et votre corps.

EU

CE

[ENGLISH]

1. DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
Hereby, [D&M Holdings Inc.] declares that our product is in compliance with following EU/EC Directives. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets RE directive requirements. Modification of the product could result in hazardous Radio and EMC radiation.

3. CAUTION
Separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons. This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

[DEUTSCH]

1. ÜBEREINSTIMMUNGSERKLÄRUNG
Hiermit erklärt [D&M Holdings Inc.], dass unser Produkt der, dass die folgenden EU/EC-Richtlinien entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar:

2. WICHTIGER HINWEIS: NEHMEN SIE KEINE VERÄNDERUNGEN AN DIESEM PRODUKT VOR
Wenn dieses Produkt entsprechend dieser Bedienungsanleitung aufgebaut wird, entspricht es den Anforderungen der RE-Richtlinie. Veränderungen am Produkt können zu gefährlicher Funk- und EMV-Strahlung führen.

3. VORSICHT
Zwischen dieses Produkts und Personen muss ein Schutzabstand von 20 cm eingehalten werden. Dieses Produkt und seine Antenne dürfen nicht neben anderen Antennen oder Sendern aufgestellt oder zusammen mit ihnen verwendet werden.

[FRANÇAIS]

1. DECLARATION DE CONFORMITE
Le soussigné, [D&M Holdings Inc.], déclare que notre produit est conforme à la directive UE/CE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante:

2. MISE EN GARDE IMPORTANTE : NE JAMAIS MODIFIER CE PRODUIT
Si toutes les consignes indiquées dans ce mode ont été respectées pendant son installation, ce produit est conforme aux directives RE. Toute modification du produit risquerait alors de générer des radiations radio et EMC dangereuses.

3. ATTENTION
L'appareil devra être située à une distance de 20 cm au moins des personnes. Ce produit ainsi que son antenne ne devront en aucun cas être utilisés à proximité d'une autre antenne ou transmetteur.

[ITALIANO]

1. DICHIARAZIONE DI CONFORMITÀ
Il fabbricante, [D&M Holdings Inc.], dichiara che il nostro prodotto è conforme alla direttiva UE/CE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet:

2. AVVERTENZA IMPORTANTE: NON MODIFICARE QUESTO PRODOTTO
Se installato come indicato nelle istruzioni del presente manuale, questo prodotto soddisfa i requisiti della direttiva RE. Eventuali modifiche apportate al prodotto potrebbero causare pericolose radiazioni radio ed EMC.

3. ATTENZIONE
È necessario mantenere una distanza minima di 20 cm tra questo prodotto e le persone. Questo prodotto e la relativa antenna non devono essere posizionati in prossimità di altre antenne o trasmettitori e non devono essere utilizzati congiuntamente a questi ultimi.

[ESPAÑOL]

1. DECLARACIÓN DE CONFORMIDAD
Por la presente, [D&M Holdings Inc.], declara que nuestro producto es conforme con la Directivas UE/CE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente:

2. NOTA IMPORTANTE: NO MODIFIQUE ESTE PRODUCTO
Este producto, si es instalado de acuerdo con las instrucciones contenidas en este manual, cumple los requisitos de la directiva RE. La modificación del producto puede producir radiación de Radio y EMC peligrosa.

3. PRECAUCIÓN
Se debe mantener una separación de al menos 20 cm del producto y las personas. Este producto y su antena no debe instalarse ni utilizarse conjuntamente con otra antena o transmisor.

[NEDERLANDS]

1. EENVORMIGHEIDSVERKLARING
Hierbij verklaar ik, [D&M Holdings Inc.], dat ons product conform is met Richtlijn EU/EG. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres:

2. BELANGRIJKE MEDEDELING:
BRENG AAN DIT PRODUCT GEEN AANPASSINGEN AAN
Dit product, indien geïnstalleerd volgens de aanwijzingen in deze gebruiksaanwijzing, voldoet aan de vereisten van de RE-richtlijn. Aanpassing van dit product kan gevaarlijke radio- en EMC-straling tot gevolg hebben.

3. LET OP
Houd tussen en personen altijd een afstand van tenminste 20 cm aan. Dit product en zijn antenne mogen niet in de buurt van een andere antenne of zender worden geplaatst of in combinatie daarmee worden gebruikt.

Radio Specification (for Europe model)

Type	Frequency Range	Max. RF Power
Bluetooth	2,402 – 2,480 MHz	20 dBm
WLAN (2.4 GHz)	2,400 – 2,483.5 MHz	20 dBm
5 GHz Radio	5,150 – 5,250 MHz	23 dBm
	5,250 – 5,350 MHz	23 dBm
	5,470 – 5,725 MHz	30 dBm

* Note: The above specifications is based on the RE Directive. There is a possibility to varies by countries.

[SVENSKA]

1. ÖVERENSSTÄMMELSESINTYG
Härmed försäkrar [D&M Holdings Inc.], att vår produkt överensstämmer med direktiv EU/EC. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress:

2. VIKTIGT: APPARATEN FÅR INTE MODIFIERAS
Under förutsättning att apparaten installeras enligt anvisningarna i denna bruksanvisning, uppfyller denna kraven i RE-direktivet. Ev. modifiering av apparaten kan resultera i farlig radio- och elektromagnetisk strålning.

3. FÖRSIKTIGT
Se till att det finns ett avstånd på minst 20 cm mellan apparatens och personer i omgivningen. Apparaten och dess antenn får inte placeras eller användas i närheten av andra antenner eller sändare.

[РУССКИЙ]

1. СЕРТИФИКАТ СООТВЕТСТВИЯ
Настоящим, [D&M Holdings Inc.], заявляет, что наш продукт ссоответствует Директиве EU/EC. Полный текст декларации соответствия EC можно получить по следующему интернет-адресу:

2. ВАЖНО! НЕ ИЗМЕНЯЙТЕ ДАННЫЙ ПРОДУКТ
Продукт, установленный согласно инструкциям в настоящем руководстве, отвечает требованиям директивы RE. Изменение продукта может привести к появлению опасного электромагнитного излучения.

3. ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ
Не приближайтесь к данного изделия ближе, чем на 20 см. Запрещается использовать данный продукт и антенну с другой антенной или передатчиком.

[POLSKI]

1. DEKLARACJA ZGODNOŚCI
[D&M Holdings Inc.], niniejszym oświadcza, że nasz produkt jest zgodny z dyrektywą UE/WE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym:

2. UWAGA: MODYFIKACJA TEGO URZĄDZENIA JEST ZABRONIONA
Po zainstalowaniu zgodnie z instrukcjami zawartymi w niniejszej instrukcji obsługi urządzenie to będzie spełniać wymogi dyrektywy RE. Wprowadzanie modyfikacji do tego urządzenia może skutkować powstaniem niebezpiecznego promieniowania elektromagnetycznego oraz radiowego.

3. OSTRZEŻENIE
Między tego produktu i wszelkimi osobami musi być zachowana odległość przynajmniej 20 cm. Urządzenia wraz z anteną nie można instalować w połączeniu z inną anteną lub nadajnikiem.

COMPLIANCE INFORMATION

- **Product Name: AV Surround Receiver / AV Surround Amplifier**
- **Model Number: CINEMA 70S / CINEMA 60 / CINEMA 60 DAB / CINEMA 50 / CINEMA 40**

<EU/EC Directives.>
RE: 2014/53/EU

<EU declaration of conformity URL: **http://manuals.marantz.com/CEdeclaration/**>

D&M Holdings Inc.
2-1 Nissin-cho, Kawasaki-ku, Kawasaki, Kanagawa, 210-8569 Japan
EU importer: D&M Europe B.V.
Beemdstraat 11, 5653 MA Eindhoven, The Netherlands

[ENGLISH]
5,150 – 5,350 MHz is restricted to indoor use only

[DEUTSCH]
5.150 – 5.350 MHz darf nur in geschlossenen Räumen verwendet werden

[FRANÇAIS]
5 150 - 5 350 MHz est limité à une utilisation en intérieur uniquement

[ITALIANO]
La frequenza 5.150 – 5.350 MHz è limitata al solo uso interno

[ESPAÑOL]
5.150 – 5.350 MHz está restringido al uso en interiores solamente

[NEDERLANDS]
5.150 – 5.350 MHz is beperkt tot alleen binnenshuis gebruik

[SVENSKA]
5 150 – 5 350 MHz är begränsat till inomhusbruk

[РУССКИЙ]
5150 – 5350 МГц ограничивается использованием только в помещении

[POLSKI]
5 150 – 5 350 MHz to częstotliwość ograniczona do użytkowania jedynie w pomieszczeniach

UK	DE	FR	IT
ES	NL	SE	PL

UKCA

UKCA DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
Hereby, [D&M Holdings Inc.] declares that our product is in compliance with Radio Equipment Regulation 2017 of UK regulations. The full text of the UKCA declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<UKCA declaration of conformity URL: **http://manuals.marantz.com/CEdeclaration/**>

UK Importer: D&M Audiovisual Ltd
Dale Road, Worthing, West Sussex, United Kingdom, BN11 2BH

For U.S.A.

marantz®

Limited Warranty

Sound United, LLC (Marantz) warrants the following Marantz Products for the periods indicated:

1. The following Marantz Audio/Video components, have a 3 year warranty for both Parts & Labor, from the original purchase date:
   Amplifiers, Pre Amplifiers, Pre Amplifier-Processor-Tuners, Integrated Amplifiers, Tuners, Receivers, HDMI Switcher, Blu-ray DVD SA-CD/CD Players/Changers, Learning Remote Control Devices, iPod Docks & DLP front Projectors.

2. **DLP lamps** have a 90 day warranty for parts and labor from the original purchase date.

What is covered and what is not covered

Except as specified below, this warranty covers parts and labor to correct all defects in materials and workmanship. The following are not covered by the warranty:

1. Damage, deterioration, malfunction or failure to meet performance specifications resulting from:
   a) Accident, acts of nature, misuse, abuse, neglect or unauthorized product modification.
   b) Improper installation, removal or maintenance, or failure to follow instructions supplied with the product.
   c) Repair or attempted repair by anyone not authorized by Marantz to repair the product.
   d) Any shipment of the product (claims must be presented to the carrier).
   e) Any cause other than a product defect.
2. Cleaning, initial set-up, check-ups with no defects found, or charges incurred for installation, removal or reinstallation of the product.
3. Any product on which the serial number has been defaced, modified or removed.
4. Batteries.
5. Accessories, including but not limited to, batteries, cables, mounting hardware and brackets, cleaning accessories, antenna and detachable power cords.
6. Warranty is void if purchase was made from anyone other than an authorized Marantz dealer.

Who may enforce the warranty

This warranty extends only to the original purchaser, not subsequent owners.

What we will pay for

We will pay for all labor and material expenses for items covered by the warranty. Payment of shipping charges is discussed in the next section of this warranty.

How you can get service

1. If your unit needs service, contact Marantz customer service by calling **201-762-6666**. We will advise you of the name and location of one or more authorized Marantz service stations from which service can be obtained. Please do not return your unit to the factory without prior authorization.
2. You must pay any shipping charges if it is necessary to ship the product for service. However, if the necessary repairs are covered under warranty, we will pay the return shipping charges to any destination within the United States, its possessions or territories.
3. Whenever warranty service is required, you must present the original dated sales receipt or other proof of date of purchase.

Limitation of implied warranties

All implied warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are limited in duration to the length of this warranty and are limited in scope to the terms contained in this warranty. All other warranties are hereby disclaimed.

Exclusion of damages

Marantz liability for any defective product is limited to repair or replacement of the product at Marantz's option. Marantz shall not be liable for damage to other products caused by any defects in Marantz products, damages based upon inconvenience or loss of use of the product, or any other damages, whether incidental, consequential, or otherwise.

How state law relates to the warranty

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and/or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Sound United, LLC (Marantz)

5541 Fermi Court
Carlsbad, CA 92008, USA
Phone. 201-762-6666

MARANTZ FACTORY SERVICE by UNITED RADIO

5717 Enterprise Parkway E. Syracuse, NY 13057
(800) 634-8606
http://www.unitedradio.com

To locate an authorized warranty service center within your area please visit our web site at
https://www.marantz.com/en-us/support/serviceinformation

12/2021 54311010532AM
VQE1A131U

For CANADA

marantz®

MARANTZ CANADA LIMITED WARRANTY

SOUND UNITED CANADA INC. (Marantz) warrants the following Marantz products for the periods indicated:

3-year warranty for both Parts & Labour, from the original purchase date :
Amplifiers; Pre Amplifiers; Pre Amplifier-Processor-Tuners; Integrated Amplifiers; Tuners; Receivers; HDMI Switcher; Blu-ray DVD Super Audio CD/CD Players/Changers; Learning Remote Control Devices; iPod Docks & DLP front Projectors.

90 day warranty for parts and labour from the original purchase date :
DLP lamps

What is Covered and What is Not Covered

Except as specified below, this warranty covers parts and labor to correct all defects in materials and workmanship. The following are not covered by the warranty:

1. Damage, deterioration, malfunction or failure to meet performance specifications resulting from:
   a) Accident; acts of nature; misuse; abuse; neglect; unauthorized product modification.
   b) Improper installation, removal or maintenance, or failure to follow instructions supplied with the product.
   c) Repair or attempted repair by anyone not authorized by Marantz to repair the product.
   d) Any shipment of the product (claims must be presented to the carrier)
   e) Any cause other than a product defect
2. Cleaning, initial set-up, check-ups with no defects found, or charges incurred for installation, removal or reinstallation of the product.
3. Any product on which the serial number has been defaced, modified or removed.
4. Accessories, including but not limited to, batteries, cables, mounting hardware and brackets, cleaning accessories, antenna and detachable power cords.
5. Warranty is void if purchase was made from anyone other than an authorized Marantz dealer.

Who May Enforce the Warranty
Only the original purchaser may enforce this warranty.

What We Will Pay For
We will pay for all labor and material expenses for items covered by the warranty. Payment of shipping charges is discussed in the next section of this warranty.

How You Can Get Service
1. If your unit needs service, please first contact your dealer to see what support services they do offer. You can also contact one of our Authorized Marantz Service Centers as per our website https://www.marantz.com/en-ca/support/serviceinformation or contact us directly as below. Please do not return your unit to the factory without prior authorization.
2. You must pay any shipping charges if it is necessary to ship the product for service. However, if the necessary repairs are covered under warranty, we will pay the return shipping charges to any destination within Canada.
3. Whenever warranty service is required, you must present the original dated sales receipt or other proof of date of purchase

Limitation of Implied warranties
All implied warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purchase, are limited in duration to the length of this warranty.

Exclusion of damages
Marantz liability for any defective product is limited to repair or replacement of the product at Marantz's option. Marantz shall not be liable for damage to other products caused by any defects in Marantz products, damages based upon inconvenience or loss of use of the product, or any other damages, whether incidental, consequential, or otherwise.

Some provinces do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and/or does not allow the exclusion of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations and exclusions may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, but you may also have other rights, which vary from province to province.

SOUND UNITED CANADA INC.

77 King Street West, Suite 400,
Toronto-Dominion Centre,
Toronto, ON M5K 0A1

MARANTZ FACTORY SERVICE by MICROLAND TECHNICAL SERVICES INC.

170 Alden Road Unit # 2 Markham ON L3R 4C1
(905) 940-1982
https://www.microland.ca

To locate an authorized warranty service center within your area please visit our web site at
https://www.marantz.com/en-ca/support/serviceinformation

12/2021 54311045330AM
VQE1A132S

Pour CANADA

marantz®

GARANTIE LIMITÉE DE MARANTZ CANADA

SOUND UNITED CANADA INC. (Marantz) garantie les produits suivants pour les périodes indiquées :

3 ans de garantie pour les pièces et la main d'oeuvre prenant effet à partir de la date d'achat du produit :
Amplificateurs, Préamplificateurs, Pré-ampli-processeurs-syntoniseurs; amplificateurs intégrés, syntoniseurs, récepteurs, Commutateur HDMI, Blu-ray DVD Super Audio CD/Lecteur CD/Changeur, télécommandes programmables, Docks iPod et projecteurs avant DLP.

90 jours de garantie pour les pièces et la main d'oeuvre prenant effet à partir de la date d'achat du produit :
Lampes DLP

Ce qui est couvert et pas couvert par la garantie :

A l'exception de ce qui est mentionné ci-dessous, cette garantie couvre les pièces et la main d'oeuvre afin de réparer tous les défauts de matériel ou de fabrication du produit. Ce qui suit n'est pas couvert par la garantie :

1. Les dommages, détérioration, défauts de fonctionnement, ou le fait de ne pas respecter les spécifications d'exécutions résultant d'un (e) :
   a) accident, acte de la nature, abus, négligence, utilisation impropre ou d'une modification de produit non autorisée ;
   b) installation incorrecte, déplacement, maintenance ou d'un emploi contraire aux instructions fournies avec le produit ;
   c) réparations ou tentatives de réparations par une personne non reconnue par Marantz ;
   d) envoi de produit (les réclamations doivent être présentées au transporteur)
   e) cause autre qu'un défaut de produit.
2. L'entretien, l'installation initiale, toute vérification de produit ou aucun défaut n'a été trouvé, ou tous frais encourus pour l'installation, le déplacement ou la réinstallation du produit.
3. Tout produit dont le numéro de série a été effacé, modifié ou enlevé.
4. Les accessoires incluant mais non limités aux, piles, câbles, matériaux de support, accessoires de nettoyage, antennes et cordons de secteur détachables.
5. La garantie n'est pas valable si l'achat a été fait au Canada chez un revendeur non reconnu par Marantz.

Qui peut faire appliquer la garantie
Seule la personne qui a acheté le produit à l'origine peut faire appliquer la garantie.

Notre paiement
Nous paierons tous les frais de pièces et de main d'oeuvre pour tous les produits couverts par la garantie. Le paiement des frais de livraison est abordé dans la section suivante de cette garantie.

Comment obtenir du service
1. Si votre produit Marantz requiert du service, communiquez premièrement avec votre revendeur autorisé afin de connaître s'il peut procéder au service de votre appareil. Vous pouvez aussi consulter la liste des centres de service autorisés sur notre site web au https://www.marantz.com/en-ca/support/serviceinformation ou contactez nous directement aux coordonnées ci-dessous. Veuillez ne pas retourner votre appareil chez le manufacturier sans autorisation obtenue préalablement.
2. Vous devez payer les frais de livraison dans le cas où votre appareil a besoin d'être envoyé au service des réparations. Toutefois, si les réparations nécessaires sont couvertes par la garantie, nous payerons les frais de retour d'expédition et ce quelle que soit la destination au Canada.
3. Lorsque vous envoyez votre appareil pour un service sous garantie, vous devez joindre une copie de la facture d'achat (ticket ou autre preuve d'achat)

Limites des garanties implicites
Toutes les garanties implicites, y compris les garanties de valeur marchande et spécifique pour un achat particulier, sont limitées dans la durée à la longueur de cette garantie.

Exclusion des dommages
La responsabilité de Marantz est limitée pour n'importe quel produit défectueux en ce qui concerne la réparation ou le remplacement du produit en question. Si des dommages interviennent à des produits autres que ceux de Marantz, Marantz ne sera pas tenu responsable des dits dommages, basés sur le dérangement ou la perte d'utilisation du produit ou tout autre dommage qu'il soit fortuit, indirect ou autre.

Certaines provinces ne permettent pas de limites quant à la durée d'une garantie sous-entendue et/ou ne permettent pas l'exclusion de dommages fortuits ; ainsi les limitations et les exclusions mentionnées ci-dessus peuvent ne pas s'appliquer à votre cas.

Cette garantie vous donne des droits légaux spécifiques, mais vous pouvez aussi avoir d'autres droits qui peuvent varier d'une province à l'autre.

Cette garantie n'est seulement valable qu'au Canada.

SOUND UNITED CANADA INC.

77 King Street West, Suite 400,
Toronto-Dominion Centre,
Toronto, ON M5K 0A1

MARANTZ FACTORY SERVICE par MICROLAND TECHNICAL SERVICES INC.

170 Alden Road Unit # 2 Markham ON L3R 4C1
(905) 940-1982
https://www.microland.ca

Pour trouver un centre de service de garantie autorisé dans votre région, veuillez consulter notre site web à l'adresse suivante https://www.marantz.com/en-ca/support/serviceinformation

Safety Instructions (Read these safety instructions before operating the unit.)

marantz

❑ SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN

CAUTION:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

❑ IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings.
   Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.

13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
15. Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

❑ FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION
This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Sound United, LLC
5541 Fermi Court Carlsbad, CA 92008, USA
Tel. (800) 377-7655

2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT
This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by Marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

3. NOTE
This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.
This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
•Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
•Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
•Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
•Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

4. IMPORTANT (For Network model)
When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

5. CAUTION (For Bluetooth/Wi-Fi model)
•To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirement, separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between this product and all persons.
•This product and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

❑ IC INFORMATION (For Canadian customers)

CAN ICES-3(B)/NMB-3(B)

D&M Holdings Inc. 5431 10768 00AM
VQE1A1291Z

CAUTION:
To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet.
The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

PRECAUTION:
Pour déconnecter complètement ce produit du courant secteur, débranchez la prise de la prise murale.
La prise secteur est utilisée pour couper complètement l'alimentation de l'appareil et l'utilisateur doit pouvoir y accéder facilement.

CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION
For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.
- Amplifier: 0.3 m or more
- Other units: 0.1 m or more

PRÉCAUTIONS D'INSTALLATION
Pour permettre la dissipation de chaleur requise, n'installez pas cette unité dans un espace confiné tel qu'une bibliothèque ou un endroit similaire.
- Amplificateur: 0,3 m ou plus
- Autres appareils: 0,1 m ou plus

❑ NOTES ON USE / OBSERVATIONS RELATIVES A L'UTILISATION

WARNINGS	AVERTISSEMENTS
• Avoid high temperatures. • Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack. • Handle the power cord carefully. • Hold the plug when unplugging the cord. • Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust. • Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time. • Do not obstruct the ventilation holes. • Do not let foreign objects into the unit. • Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit. • Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way. • Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains. • Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit. • Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal. • Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids. • Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit. • Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands. • When the switch is in the OFF (STANDBY) position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS. • The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible. • Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater. • Do not bend forcedly the plug on the equipment for the connection between the connector and micro USB/USB cable.	• Eviter des températures élevées. • Tenir compte d'une dispersion de chaleur suffisante lors de l'installation sur une étagère. • Manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec précaution. • Tenir la prise lors du débranchement du cordon. • Protéger l'appareil contre l'humidité, l'eau et la poussière. • Débrancher le cordon d'alimentation lorsque l'appareil n'est pas utilisé pendant de longues périodes. • Ne pas obstruer les trous d'aération. • Ne pas laisser des objets étrangers dans l'appareil. • Ne pas mettre en contact des insecticides, du benzène et un diluant avec l'appareil. • Ne jamais démonter ou modifier l'appareil d'une manière ou d'une autre. • Ne pas recouvrir les orifices de ventilation avec des objets tels que des journaux, nappes ou rideaux. Cela entraverait la ventilation. • Ne jamais placer de flamme nue sur l'appareil, notamment des bougies allumées. • Veillez à respecter les lois en vigueur lorsque vous jetez les piles usagées. • L'appareil ne doit pas être exposé à l'eau ou à l'humidité. • Ne pas poser d'objet contenant du liquide, par exemple un vase, sur l'appareil. • Ne pas manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec les mains mouillées. • Lorsque l'interrupteur est sur la position OFF (STANDBY), l'appareil n'est pas complètement déconnecté du SECTEUR (MAINS). • L'appareil sera installé près de la source d'alimentation, de sorte que cette dernière soit facilement accessible. • Ne placez pas la pile dans un endroit exposé à la lumière directe du soleil ou dans des endroits présentant des températures extrêmement élevées, par exemple près d'un radiateur. • Ne pliez pas la fiche sur l'appareil en forçant pour connecter la borne au câble micro USB/USB.

CAUTION (FOR AMPLIFIER):

HOT SURFACE. DO NOT TOUCH.

The top surface over the internal heat sink may become hot when operating this product continuously.
Do not touch hot areas, especially around the "Hot surface mark" and the top panel.

Hot surface mark

PRECAUTION (POUR AMPLIFICATEUR):

SURFACE CHAUDE. NE PAS TOUCHER.

La surface supérieure du dissipateur de chaleur peut devenir chaude si vous utilisez ce produit en continu.
Ne touchez pas les zones chaudes, tout particulièrement vers l'inscription "Hot surface mark" et le panneau supérieur.

PRECAUCIÓN (PARA EL AMPLIFICADOR):

SUPERFICIE CALIENTE. NO TOCAR.

La superficie superior sobre el disipador de calor interno podría llegar a calentarse al operar este producto de forma continua.
No toque las áreas calie ntes, especialmente las situadas alrededor de la "Hot surface mark" y del panel superior.

CUIDADO (PARA O AMPLIFICADOR):

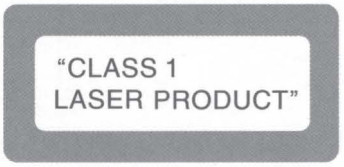
SUPERFÍCIE QUENTE. NÃO TOCAR.

A face superior localizada por cima do dissipador interno de calor pode ficar quente ao funcionar com este produto em modo contínuo.
Não tocar nas zonas quentes, especialmente à volta do "Hot surface mark" e no painel superior.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT (FOR DISC PLAYER)

CAUTION:

USE OF CONTROLS OR ADJUSTMENTS OR PERFORMANCE OF PROCEDURES OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN MAY RESULT IN HAZARDOUS RADIATION EXPOSURE.
THIS PRODUCT SHOULD NOT BE ADJUSTED OR REPAIRED BY ANYONE EXCEPT PROPERLY QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.



PRODUIT LASER CLASSE 1 (POUR LECTEUR DE DISQUE)

ATTENTION:

L'UTILISATION DE COMMANDES, DE RÉGLAGES OU DE PERFORMANCE DE PROCÉDURES AUTRES QUE CELLES SPÉCIFIÉES ICI PEUT ENTRAÎNER UNE EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE À DES RADIATIONS.
CE PRODUIT DOIT UNIQUEMENT ÊTRE RÉGLÉ OU RÉPARÉ PAR UN PERSONNEL DE SERVICE SUFFISAMMENT QUALIFIÉ.

PRODUCTO LÁSER DE CLASE 1 (PARA EL REPRODUCTOR DE DISCOS)

PRECAUCIÓN:

EL USO DE CONTROLES, AJUSTES, O LA REALIZACIÓN DE PROCEDIMIENTOS DISTINTOS A LOS AQUÍ ESPECIFICADOS, PUEDE PROVOCAR UNA EXPOSICIÓN PELIGROSA A LA RADIACIÓN.
ESTE PRODUCTO NO DEBE SER AJUSTADO O REPARADO POR NINGUNA PERSONA EXCEPTO POR PERSONAL DE SERVICIO DEBIDAMENTE CUALIFICADO.

PRODUTO LASER DE CLASSE 1 (PARA LEITOR DE DISCOS)

CUIDADO:

O USO DE CONTROLOS, AJUSTES OU DESEMPENHO DE PROCEDIMENTOS QUE NÃO OS AQUI ESPECIFICADOS PODE RESULTAR EM EXPOSIÇÃO A RADIAÇÃO PERIGOSA.
ESTE PRODUTO NÃO DEVE SER AJUSTADO OU REPARADO POR NINGUÉM EXCEPTO POR PESSOAL TÉCNICO DEVIDAMENTE QUALIFICADO.

WARNING:

DO NOT INGEST BATTERY, CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

- The remote control supplied with this product contains a coin/button cell battery. If the coin/button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death.
- Keep new and used batteries away from children. If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children.If you think batteries might have swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate Medical attention.

AVERTISSEMENT:

N'INGÉREZ PAS LA PILE, RISQUE DE BRÛLURE CHIMIQUE

- La télécommande fournie avec ce produit contient une pile bouton. Une ingestion de la pile bouton risque de causer de sévères brûlures internes en à peine 2 heures et peut entraîner la mort.
- Conservez les piles neuves et usagées hors de portée des enfants. Si le compartiment à piles ne se ferme pas de manière sécurisée, arrêtez d'utiliser le produit et conservez-le hors de portée des enfants. Si vous pensez que des piles ont été ingérées ou placées dans n'importe quel orifice corporel, contactez immédiatement une assistance médicale.

ADVERTENCIA:

NO INGERIR LA BATERÍA, RIESGO DE QUEMADURAS POR PRODUCTOS QUÍMICOS

- El control remoto suministrado con este producto contiene una pila de botón. En caso de ingestión, la pila de botón puede causar quemaduras internas graves en solo 2 horas y puede ocasionar la muerte.
- Mantenga las pilas nuevas y usadas fuera del alcance de los niños. Si el compartimento de la pila no se cierra firmemente, deje de utilizar el producto y manténgalo fuera del alcance de los niños. Si cree que se han podido ingerir pilas, o las mismas se encuentran en alguna parte en el interior del cuerpo, solicite atención médica de inmediato.

AVISO:

NÃO INGIRA A PILHA, PERIGO DE QUEIMADURA QUÍMICA

- O controlo remoto fornecido com este produto contém uma pilha de célula moeda/botão. Se a pilha de célula moeda/botão for engolida, pode causar queimaduras internas graves em apenas 2 horas e pode levar à morte.
- Mantenha as pilhas novas e usadas longe das crianças. Se o compartimento da pilha não fechar com firmeza, pare de utilizar o produto e mantenha-o afastado das crianças. Se pensa que as pilhas possam ter sido engolidas ou colocadas dentro de qualquer parte do corpo, procure ajuda médica imediata.

CAUTIONS ON USING BATTERIES

There is a possibility of smoke, fire, explosion from the battery, Please note as following.

- Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation. Replace them with new batteries at an early date.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the ⊕ and ⊖ marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
  - Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
  - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
  - Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- The remote control unit may function improperly if rechargeable batteries are used.

PRÉCAUTIONS RELATIVES À l'UTILISATION DES PILES

Il existe un risque d'émission de fumée, d'incendie, d'explosion de la pile. Veuillez tenir compte des points suivants.

- Insérez les piles spécifiées dans la télécommande.
- Remplacez les piles si l'appareil ne fonctionne pas même lorsque la télécommande est actionnée à proximité. (Les piles fournies ne servent qu'aux opérations de vérification. Remplacez-les par des piles neuves sans attendre.)
- Lorsque vous insérez les piles, assurez-vous de les placer dans le bon sens, en respectant les marques ⊕ et ⊖ qui figurent dans le compartiment à piles.
- Pour éviter un endommagement de la télécommande ou une fuite du liquide des piles:
  - Ne pas mélanger piles neuves et anciennes.
  - Ne pas utiliser deux types de piles différents.
  - Ne pas essayer de charger de piles sèches.
  - Ne pas court-circuiter, démonter, chauffer ou brûler les piles.
  - Ne placez pas la pile dans un endroit exposé à la lumière directe du soleil ou dans des endroits présentant des températures extrêmement élevées, par exemple près d'un radiateur.
- En cas de fuite du liquide de pile, essuyez soigneusement l'intérieur du compartiment avant d'insérer de nouvelles piles.
- Ôtez les piles de la télécommande si vous ne l'utilisez pas pendant longtemps.
- Veuillez vous débarrasser des piles usagées conformément aux lois locales relatives à la mise au rebut des piles.
- La télécommande risque de ne pas fonctionner correctement en cas d'utilisation de piles rechargeables.

AVISOS SOBRE DE LAS PILAS

Existe posibilidad de generación de humo, incendio o explosión de la batería. Tenga en cuenta los siguientes aspectos.

- Introduzca las pilas especificadas en el mando a distancia.
- Ponga pilas nuevas si el equipo no funciona ni siquiera si el mando a distancia se pone muy cerca. (Las pilas que se entregan con la unidad solo sirven para verificar que funciona. Cámbielas por pilas nuevas lo antes posible.)
- Cuando inserte las baterías, asegúrese de hacerlo en la dirección correcta, según las marcas ⊕ y ⊖ en el compartimiento de baterías.
- Para evitar daños o derrames del fluido de la batería:
  - No utilice una nueva batería junto con una ya utilizada.
  - No utilice dos tipos diferentes de baterías.
  - No intente cargar baterías secas.
  - No corto circuíte, desensamble, caliente o queme las baterías.
  - No coloque las pilas en un lugar expuesto a la luz directa del sol o donde la temperatura sea extremadamente alta, como cerca de una calefacción.
- Si hay fluido de batería, limpie cuidadosamente el fluido en el compartimiento de las baterías e inserte unas nuevas.
- Retire las baterías del mando a distancia si no lo va a utilizar por una largo periodo de tiempo.
- Las pilas usadas deben desecharse de acuerdo a las regulaciones locales concernientes al desecho de pilas.
- Puede que el mando a distancia no funcione correctamente si se utilizan pilas recargables.

CUIDADOS NA UTILIZAÇÃO PILHAS

Existe a possibilidade de aparecer fumo, chamas, ou que a bateria possa explodir. Por favor, preste atenção.

- Coloque as pilhas indicadas na unidade de controlo remoto.
- Substitua as pilhas por novas se o conjunto não funcionar mesmo accionando a unidade de controlo remoto próximo da unidade. (As pilhas fornecidas destinam-se apenas à verificação do correcto funcionamento da unidade.)
- Ao colocar as pilhas, certifique-se de que as coloca na direcção correcta, seguindo as indicações ⊕ e ⊖ existentes no compartimento das pilhas.
- Para evitar danos ou derrame de líquido das pilhas:
  - Não utilize uma pilha nova em conjunto com uma usada.
  - Não utilize dois tipos diferentes de pilhas.
  - Não tente carregar pilhas secas.
  - Não faça a ligação em curto-circuito, não desmonte, não aqueça nem queime as pilhas numa fogueira.
  - Não coloque as pilhas num local exposto à luz directa do sol nem em locais com temperaturas extremamente elevadas como, por exemplo, próximo de um aquecedor.
- Em caso de derrame de líquido das pilhas, limpe cuidadosamente o líquido do interior do compartimento das pilhas e coloque pilhas novas.
- Retire as pilhas da unidade de controlo remoto caso não a vá utilizar durante longos períodos de tempo.
- As pilhas usadas devem ser descartadas em conformidade com os regulamentos locais relativos à eliminação de pilhas/baterias.
- A unidade de controlo remoto poderá não funcionar correctamente se forem utilizadas pilhas recarregáveis.

For lithium battery:

For California customers only:
This product contains a battery that contains perchlorate material.
Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

marantz®

www.marantz.com

HEOS BUILT-IN

Unlock the Magic of Unlimited Hi-Res Listening

1 +

2 HEOS APP

3 Spotify amazon music HD pandora iHeart RADIO SiriusXM TUNE IN deezer TIDAL

Marantz with HEOS Built-in.
Any song. Any Room. Indoors or Out.

What is HEOS?

HEOS is a smart, wireless music streaming technology built into your Marantz product. It uses your home network and the HEOS app to play your favorite music anywhere in your home.

* Make sure to connect your Marantz product to the network first

Voice Control

With HEOS account, you can also enjoy hands-free voice control working seamlessly with leading voice assistants. Play a song, change volume, skip tracks, switch inputs and more.

* Learn more at www.heosaudio.com/voice Requires device with Amazon Alexa, Google Assistant or Apple Siri built-in (sold separately).

Qu'est-ce que HEOS?

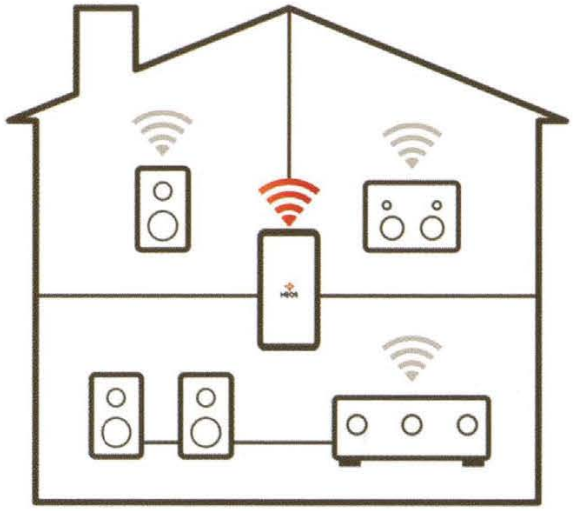
HEOS ist ein kabelloses Musiksystem, mit dem Sie Ihre gesamte Musik mühelos von überall im Haus steuern. Sie benötigen lediglich einen oder mehrere HEOS Lautsprecher und die kostenlose App.

* D'abord, assurez-vous de connecter votre produit Marantz au réseau.

Commande Vocale

Grâce à votre compte HEOS, profitez de la commande vocale mains libres au fonctionnement harmonieux avec les meilleurs assistants vocaux. Faites jouer une chanson, ajustez le volume, sautez une piste, changez d'entrée et plus encore.

* Pour en savoir plus, visitez www.heosaudio.com/voice. Requiert un appareil intégrant Alexa d'Amazon, l'Assistant Google ou Siri d'Apple (vendu séparément).



HEOS BUILT-IN

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

works with alexa

works with the Google Assistant

Works with Apple AirPlay

Support: +1 (855) 499-2820

* Music and voice services availability varies by region.
* L'accessibilité des services musicaux et vocaux varie selon la région.

www.marantz.com
VQE1A1166Y

How to use Connect

You'll need Spotify Premium to use Connect, see details overleaf.

1. Add your new device to the same wifi network as your phone, tablet or PC (see product user instructions for details).
2. Open the Spotify app on your phone, tablet or PC, and play any song.
3. If you're using the app on a phone - tap the song image in the bottom left of the screen. For tablet and PC move to step 4.
4. Tap the Connect icon
5. Pick your device from the list. If you can't see it, just check it's connected to the same wifi network as your phone, tablet or PC.

All done! Happy listening.

Spotify

Say hello to Spotify Premium

Spotify Premium lets you listen to millions of songs ad-free – the artists you love, the latest hits and discoveries just for you. Simply hit play to hear any song you like, at the highest sound quality.

Check out our current Premium offers at **spotify.com/premium**

Your new device has Spotify Connect built in.

Spotify Connect lets you control the music playing on your device, using the Spotify app on your mobile, tablet or PC.

Listening is seamless. You can take calls, play games, even switch your phone off – all without interrupting the music.

Learn more at **spotify.com/connect**

Spotify®

VQE1A821Z